

New American Inside Out

Sue Kay Vaughan Jones

Adapted by: Peter Maggs Catherine Smith



Student's Book with CD-ROM

Pre-intermediate



MACMILLAN

Name

Grammar Tense review. *looks / looks like*. Question forms

Vocabulary Family. Description. Names

Useful phrases Showing interest

Listening

- 1 1.02 Listen to two people talking about their names.
Underline the four names you hear for each person.

The man

Benjamin Ben Benji Tree Big Ben

The woman

Maria Anna-Maria Mumu Mimi Baby

- 2 Complete these sentences with the words in the box.

brother English friends Mexican friends
old friends parents sisters

- His *parents* call him Benjamin.
- His ____ call him Tree.
- His ____ call him Big Ben.
- Her ____ call her Anna-Maria.
- Her ____ call her Maria.
- Her ____ calls her Baby.

Listen again and check your answers.

- 3 Tell a partner the names that people call you. Which of your names do you like best?

Vocabulary

- 1 1.03 Listen and repeat the words in the box.

aunt boyfriend brother brother-in-law cousin daughter father
girlfriend grandfather grandmother half-brother half-sister mother
nephew niece sister sister-in-law son stepfather stepmother uncle

- 2 Complete the table with words from Exercise 1. Where possible, add the first name of a person from your family as an example.

♂ Male	♀ Female
boyfriend – No brother = Paco	aunt = Pilar

Tell your partner about some of the people in your family.

I don't have a boyfriend. My brother's name is Diego. He's a student. He lives in Quito ...

- 3 Work with your partner. Look at your names in Exercise 2 and discuss these questions.
- Which names are typical in your country?
 - Which name is the most unusual?
 - Which name do you like best?

Reading

- How did your parents choose your name? Was it for one of the reasons below or for a different reason? Tell a partner.
 - Your parents named you after a relative.
 - They named you after a place.
 - They chose an unusual name.
 - They named you after a famous person.
 - Your name is religious.
 - It has a special meaning.
 - Your parents simply liked the name.
- Read the article. Which of the reasons (a–g) in Exercise 1 is not mentioned?

What's in a name?

Your name is extremely important. It's how you identify yourself. It's how other people identify you. So how do parents make one of the most important decisions of their children's lives – giving them a name?

In the past, parents named their children after important family relatives. But **people are changing**. Nowadays, parents don't want to name their little princess Ethel Gertrude after her grandmother.

It's fashionable to choose names of places for children's names. For example, Madonna named her daughter Lourdes after the town in France. David and Victoria Beckham named their first child Brooklyn after an area in New York. However, it isn't a good idea to follow this trend if your favorite place is your local pizza restaurant or shopping mall!

Some people name their children after famous people. For example, Leonardo DiCaprio's parents named him after the famous Italian painter. A few years ago, the names Beyoncé and Britney were very popular.

Some names have a special meaning. Have you ever heard of anyone named Sky, Rain, or River? These names come from nature and you can see what they mean. But did you know that actor Keanu Reeves' name

means "cool breeze over the mountain" in Hawaiian?

A recent survey showed that people with unusual or original names feel special. I wonder if this is true for Bruce Willis and Demi Moore's children: Rumer Glenn, Scout LaRue, and Tallulah Belle.

I've chosen the name I want for a daughter. I'm going to name her Lauren. Why? Simply because I like the name. My mother liked the name Lauren too, but unfortunately she named me Ethel Gertrude after my grandmother.



- What name would you choose for a baby girl or a baby boy?

Grammar

Tenses and auxiliary verbs

- Simple present: *do/does*
- Present progressive: *am/are/is*
- Present perfect: *have/has*
- Simple past: *did*
- Future (*be*) going to: *am/are/is*

- Match each **highlighted** verb phrase in the article with a tense.

people are changing – present progressive

- Write the negative form for each sentence and name the tense.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| a) I like rock music. | d) I went out last night. |
| <i>I don't like rock music. (Simple present)</i> | e) I've been to Peru. |
| b) I'm reading a good book right now. | f) I can play the piano. |
| c) I'm going to have some coffee after the class. | |

Check (✓) the affirmative or negative sentences which are true for you.

- a) *I like rock music.* ✓ / *I don't like rock music.*

- Write the question form for each sentence and the short answers Yes and No. Ask your partner the questions.

- a) *Do you like rock music?* Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Pronunciation

1 1.04 Listen and repeat the vowel sounds: /u/, /i/, /a/, /ɜ:/, /ɔ/.

2 1.05 Listen and repeat the names in the table. Then label each group (1-5) with the correct vowel sound (/u/, /i/, /a/, /ɜ:/, /ɔ/).

1 /u/	2 _____	3 _____	4 _____	5 _____
June	Bert	Charles	Eve	Dawn
Luke	Pearl	Robert	Dean	Shaun
Sue	Kurt	Holly	Pete	Paul

Listening

1 1.06 How well can you remember names? Study the pictures of nine people below and listen to their names. Don't write them down.



How many names can you remember? Write them down and compare with a partner.

2 Listen again and check. Who remembered the most names? Do you have any special techniques for remembering names?

I try to repeat the name in my head.

Reading

1 Read this advice for improving your memory. Match the headings (a–d) with the appropriate paragraphs (1–4).

- a) Connect the name and the appearance c) Use the name and repeat it
b) Pay attention d) Visualize the name

How to remember names at parties



What's the best way to make a really good impression at a party? By wearing the best clothes? Telling the best jokes? Dancing like a professional? No – you just need to remember people's names. Here are some easy steps.

1

At parties, we sometimes don't hear the other person's name – not because the music is too loud, but because we're too focused on ourselves. So the first step is to pay attention. When you meet someone for the first time, listen carefully to the name and look at the person's face.

2

When you're speaking to the person, use their name. For example, "Nice to meet you, Danny." "What do you do, Danny?" or "Danny, it was nice talking to you." Then repeat the new name in your head at least three times.

3

Franklin Roosevelt amazed his staff by remembering the names of nearly everyone he met. His secret? He visualized the name on the person's forehead. It's also a good idea to imagine yourself writing the name in your favorite color.

4

In your mind, say the name and something memorable about the person's appearance. For example, Charles – looks like a banker; Ann – long, blond hair; George – mustache; Sophia – looks friendly.

Finally, if you want to remember other people's names as well as your own name, drink orange juice!

2 Discuss these questions with a partner.

- a) Which of these techniques have you used for remembering names?
b) Which of these techniques could help you to remember new English words?
c) What other ways can you think of to help remember and learn new English words?

Grammar

look(s) / look(s) like

look(s) + adjective:

You **look** tired.

look(s) like + noun:

She **looks like** a student.

1 Look at the words and phrases in the box. Write *N* for nouns or noun phrases and *A* for adjectives or adjective phrases.

- | | | | | |
|---|---|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ☒ <i>A</i> friendly | ☒ <i>N</i> a banker | ☒ intelligent | ☐ shy | ☐ a doctor |
| ☐ very young | ☐ middle-aged | ☐ stressed | ☐ about sixty | ☐ Mexican |
| ☐ a waiter | ☐ a student | ☐ a retired police officer | ☐ rich | |

What type of word do you use after *look(s)*? What type of word do you use after *look(s) like*?

2 Write a sentence to describe each person in the nine pictures on page 6. Leave a space for the name.

_____ looks about fifty and pretty friendly. He looks like a banker.

Ask your partner to complete each sentence with the correct name.

Reading

- 1 Read the questionnaire and check (✓) the answers that are right for you. What does your score mean? Compare with a partner.

ARE YOU a good language learner?

1 Why are you learning English?

- a) I want to get a better job.
- b) I want to travel.
- c) Good question ... er ...

2 What do you enjoy doing in class?

- a) Speaking and listening.
- b) Reading and writing.
- c) Drawing pictures.

3 When did you last read a book or magazine in English?

- a) Last week.
- b) Six months ago.
- c) Book? Magazine? Read?

4 Where do you write down new vocabulary?

- a) In a notebook.
- b) On pieces of paper.
- c) On my hand.

5 How do you practice English at home?

- a) I watch DVDs in English with subtitles.
- b) I listen to music in English.
- c) I talk to my dog.

6 What's your memory like?

- a) Excellent.
- b) OK.
- c) What was the question?

7 What kind of dictionary do you have?

- a) A bilingual and an English/English dictionary.
- b) An electronic dictionary.
- c) My teacher is my dictionary.

8 How many languages can you speak?

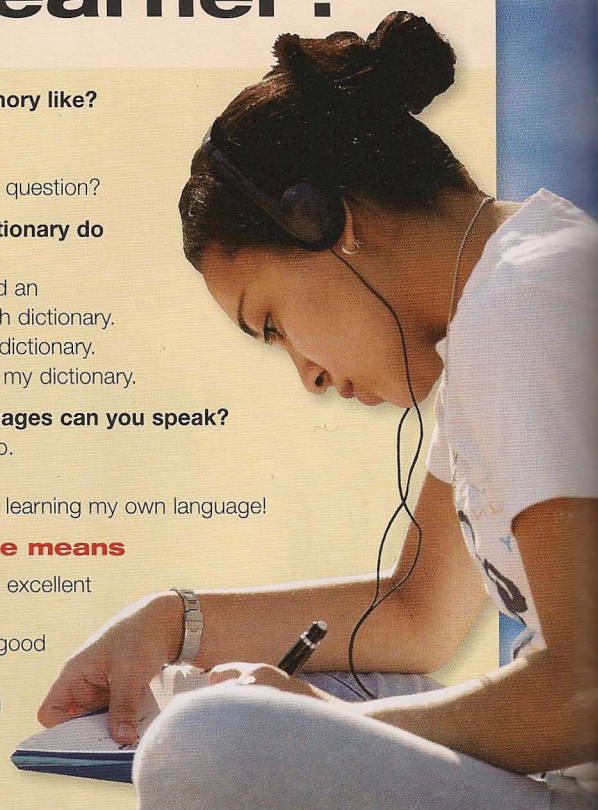
- a) More than two.
- b) One or two.
- c) None. I'm still learning my own language!

What your score means

Mainly As = You're an excellent language learner.

Mainly Bs = You're a good language learner.

Mainly Cs = Have you ever thought about taking salsa lessons?



2 Match these language learning tips with the questions in the questionnaire.

- a) Read as much as possible. Graded readers are perfect. *Question 3*
- b) Train your memory. Exercise your brain.
- c) Participate in class. Speak out. Give it a try.
- d) Go out and buy a good dictionary.
- e) Have a good reason for learning English.
- f) Think about how you learned your own or other languages.
- g) Write down and constantly review new language.
- h) Look for more English outside the classroom.

Which tips do you follow? What other tips can you think of?

Speaking

1 Replace the **highlighted** words and phrases to make five new questions to ask a partner. Use the suggestions or your own ideas.

- a) What do you enjoy **doing in class**? (watching on TV / reading / doing in your free time)
- b) When did you last **read a book in English**? (go dancing / buy a DVD / drink champagne)
- c) Where do you **write down new vocabulary**? (go on vacation / do your shopping / have lunch)
- d) What's your **memory** like? (house / city or town / family)
- e) What kind of **dictionary** do you have? (computer / car / job)

2 Ask your partner your questions from Exercise 1. What is the most interesting thing you've learned about your partner?

Grammar

Question forms

Is she hungry?

Have they arrived?

What **does** "nephew" mean?

1 Look at the table and match the questions (a–d) with the correct answers (1–4).

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| a) What are the blue words? | 1 (auxiliary) verb + subject |
| b) What are the red words? | 2 subjects |
| c) What is the word order for statements? | 3 auxiliary verbs |
| d) What is the word order for questions? | 4 subject + (auxiliary) verb |

Statements			Questions			
You	are	left-handed.		Are	you	left-handed?
Your mother	can	speak English.		Can	your mother	speak English?
You	have	been to Peru.		Have	you	been to Peru?
Your name	means	"first child."	What	does	your name	mean?

Ask a partner the questions in the table.

2 If necessary, rewrite these sentences with *do*, *does*, or *did* to make correct questions.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) You play the guitar? | d) Where your mother come from? |
| b) You sleep well last night? | e) Have you been to California? |
| c) Can you drive? | f) What's your favorite color? |

Ask your partner the questions.

3 Rewrite these questions in the correct order. (DON'T ask your partner the questions!)

- you / are / old / How ? *How old are you?*
- in life after death / Do / believe / you ?
- do / much / earn / you / How ?
- you / ever / Have / broken the law ?
- political party / vote / Which / you / do / for ?
- you / many / boyfriends or girlfriends / How / had / have ?

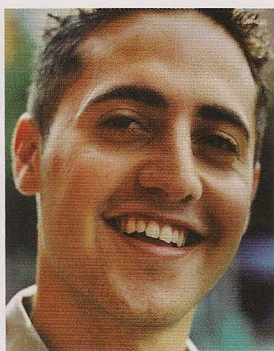
Work in small groups. Decide which questions it is OK to ask ...

- in your English class
- in your family
- never!
- with your best friends
- at work

4 **Pairwork** Student A: page 116 Student B: page 121

5 **Grammar Extra 1** page 126. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Speaking: anecdote



▲ John Carter

1 1.07 Listen to Brad talking about somebody who is important to him. Underline the answers he gives.

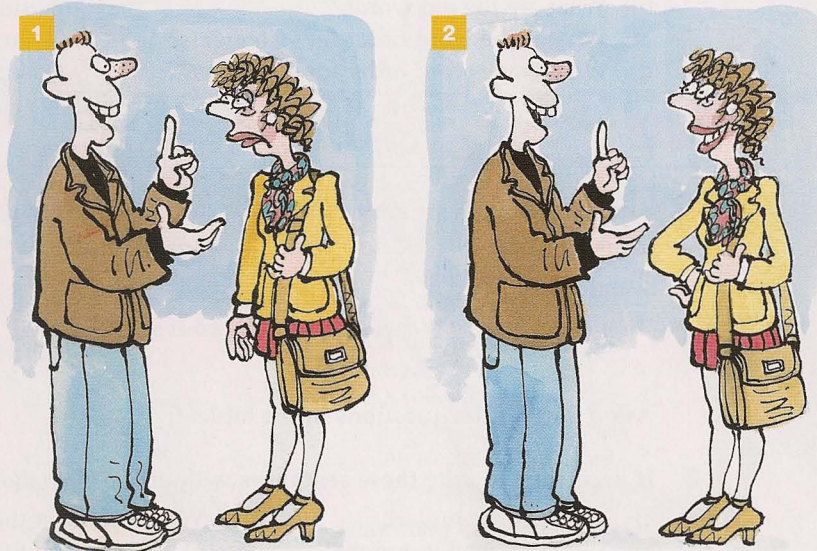
- What's this person's name? John Carter / Carl Johnson.
- When did you meet him? At college / When we were five years old.
- Where does he live? Near San Diego / In Los Angeles.
- What does he do? He's a teacher / a doctor.
- How often do you see him? Every weekend / In the summer.
- Why is he important to you? We have the same interests / He knows me so well.
- What are his best qualities? He's a really good listener / He's very funny.
- Is there anything you don't like about him? He's always late / too busy.
- When did you last see him? On my birthday / Last weekend.

2 You're going to tell your partner about a person who is important to you.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about a person who is important to you.

Useful phrases

- 1  1.08 Listen to a conversation between two friends (Adam and Beth) discussing the weekend. Match the conversation with picture 1 or picture 2.



- 2  1.09 Listen to another version of the conversation. Does Beth sound more interested this time?
- 3  1.10 Listen and repeat the useful phrases Beth uses to show that she's interested.
- Really?
 - Do they?
 - That sounds interesting.
 - That sounds great.
 - Wow! That's great.
 - I've never heard of it.
 - Oh, no! That's terrible.

- 4 Complete the conversation with the useful phrases from Exercise 3.

Adam: Did you have a good weekend?

Beth: Not bad. How about you?

Adam: I had a really good dinner on Saturday night.

Beth: (1) *Really?*

Adam: Yes, we went to a new place in town – Edamame.

Beth: (2) _____

Adam: They have a Japanese chef from Tokyo.

Beth: (3) _____

Adam: And the food is fantastic – they make their own sushi.

Beth: (4) _____

Adam: Yes. It's the best sushi I've ever tasted.

Beth: (5) _____

Adam: And it wasn't expensive. We had appetizers, an entrée, dessert, and wine, and it only cost \$25 each.

Beth: (6) _____

Adam: I know. Unfortunately, when we got back to the car, we had a parking ticket.

Beth: (7) _____

Check your answers and practice the conversation.

- 5 Work with a partner. Write a conversation about your last weekend. Include as many of the useful phrases as possible.

Vocabulary Extra

Family and other relationships

1 Complete the table.

Male	Female	Definition
a) grandson	granddaughter	Your children's children
b) nephew	niece	Your brother's or _____'s children
c) _____	grandmother	Your parents' parents
d) great-grandfather	great-grandmother	Your grandparents' _____
e) uncle	aunt	Your parents' _____ and sister
f) cousin	_____	Your aunt's or uncle's children
g) brother-in-law	sister-in-law	Your wife's or husband's brother and _____
h) _____	mother-in-law	Your wife's or husband's father and mother
i) stepfather	_____	Your mother's second husband or your father's second wife
j) _____	half-sister	The children from your father's or mother's second relationship
k) _____	ex-wife	The man or woman who you are divorced/separated from
l) twin	_____	A brother or sister who was born at the same time as you

2 Work with a partner. Discuss these questions and compare your answers.

- Who is your oldest relative? Who is your youngest relative?
- Which side of the family is bigger: your father's side or your mother's side?
- What are your neighbors like? Do you know all your neighbors' names?
- How many close friends do you have? Who is your best friend?
- Who are your favorite co-workers? Are there any co-workers you don't like?



Focus on names

1 Underline the correct word.

- My friends call / name me "Chip."
- I don't know the meaning / sign of my name.
- My parents identified / named me after my grandmother.
- I'm married but I use my maiden / feminine name at work.
- My letters / initials are CJP.
- My sign / signature is very difficult to read.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

2 Complete the form in as much detail as you can.

Title: <u>Mr</u> (Mr./Mrs./Ms., etc.)	First name: <u>ESTEVÃO</u> (Given name)	Middle name(s): <u>TEDELLA</u> (Second name)	Last name: <u>MORELO</u> (Family name)
Full name: <u>Mr. ESTEVÃO T. MORELO</u>	Initials: <u>E.T.M.</u>	Maiden name: _____	Nickname: <u>Ti</u>
		Signature: <u>[Signature]</u>	

Place

Grammar Countable and uncountable nouns. *so/such. very/too.* Quantity expressions

Vocabulary Places in a city. Adjectives. Countries, nationalities. Location. *like*

Useful phrases Saying where you are from

Vocabulary

- 1 Look at the three pictures. Would you like to live in any of these places? Why? Why not? Discuss with a partner.
- 2  1.11 Listen and repeat the words in the box. Which of these things can you find in the pictures?

a beach a bridge a canal a castle a cathedral a church a fountain
 high-rise buildings a hill a library a mosque a museum the ocean
 a park a parking lot a shopping mall a square a statue

- 3 How many of the things in Exercise 2 can you find near your school? Put them in the right order on this line.

Nearest



Furthest away

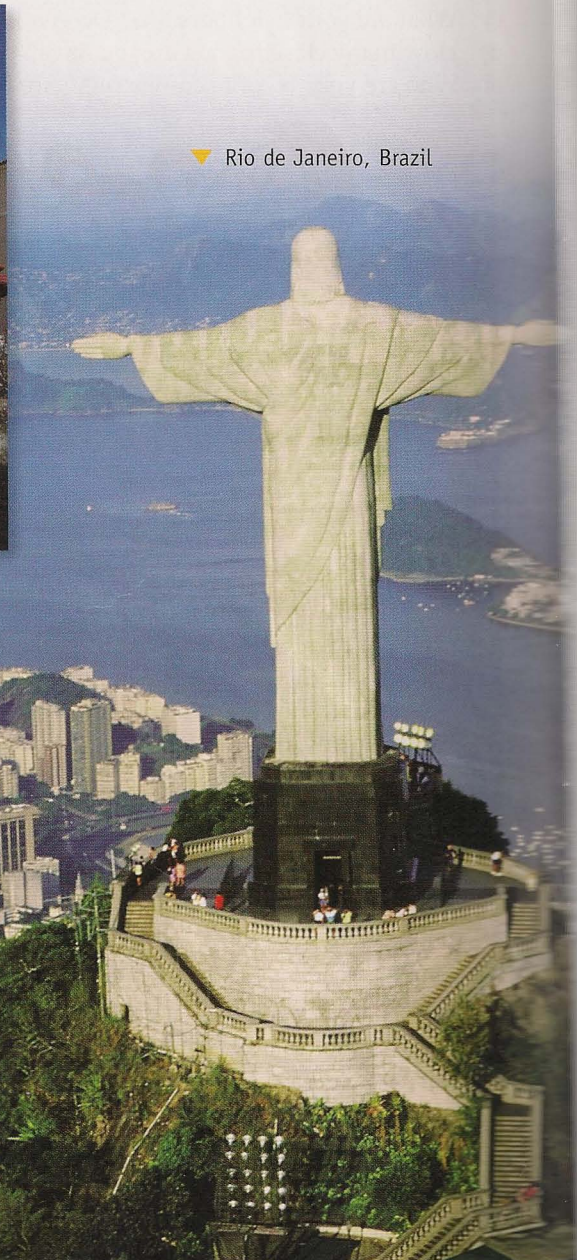


▲ Venice, Italy



▲ La Bastide, France

▼ Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

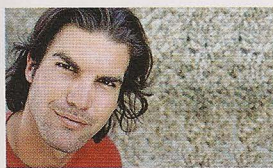




▲ Paulo



▲ Armelle



▲ Luigi

Listening

- 1 1.12 Listen to Paulo, Armelle, and Luigi talking about the three places in the pictures on page 12. Match each speaker with a picture. Who likes living where they live? Who doesn't?

- 2 Use the adjectives in the box to complete Paulo's, Armelle's, and Luigi's descriptions.

boring clean crowded ~~exciting~~ humid polluted romantic small

- a) ... a city that's so big and exciting
 b) ... it's too hot and humid
 c) ... the air is fresh and clean
 d) ... I find it so dull and boring
 e) ... it's such a romantic city.
 f) ... it gets very noisy and crowded
 g) ... the canals are so dirty and polluted
 h) ... my city is too small for all these people

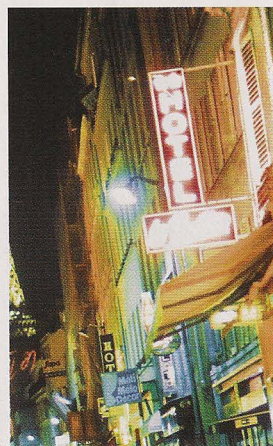
Listen again and check your answers.

Grammar & Vocabulary

so/such

so + adjective
 It's **so** romantic.

such + noun phrase
 It's **such** a romantic city.



- 1 Look at the sentences with *so* and *such* *alan* in Exercise 2 in the Listening section. Complete the rules.

- a) You use _____ + a negative or positive **adjective** for emphasis.
 b) You use _____ + a negative or positive **noun phrase** for emphasis.

- 2 Use *so* and *such* *alan* to complete the email. Is the person happy or unhappy?

Fantastic vacation!

To: Ann Jones

Subject: Fantastic vacation!

This is (1) such a beautiful place. We're (2) _____ lucky with our hotel. It's really close to downtown, and the staff is (3) _____ friendly. Our room is nice and clean, and we have (4) _____ fantastic view of the city. There are lots of good restaurants and bars, and they're (5) _____ cheap. It's (6) _____ interesting city. The museums and art galleries are great, and we're going to visit the royal palace tomorrow. It's (7) _____ exciting! We're having (8) _____ good time – we don't want to come home.

- 3 Change the email in Exercise 2 to make it sound negative.

This is such an ugly place. We're ...

- 4 Look at the sentences with *very* and *too* in Exercise 2 in the Listening section. Complete the rules.

- a) You use _____ + an **adjective** or an **adverb** to emphasize something.
 b) You use _____ + an **adjective** or an **adverb** to show that there is a problem: something is excessive or more than necessary.

- 5 Complete the sentences with *very* or *too*.

- a) My neighbors are _____ quiet. I never hear them.
 b) I can't walk to work. My office is _____ far from my house.
 c) I take the bus to work. It's _____ crowded, but I usually get a seat.
 d) It's _____ hot in the summer, but fortunately my office has air-conditioning.
 e) Time goes _____ quickly, and I never finish my work.
 f) I want to move into the city, but I can't because apartments are _____ expensive.

Check (✓) any sentences that are true for you.

very/too

very + adjective/adverb
 We were **very** late (but we caught our train).

too + adjective/adverb
 We were **too** late (so we missed our train).

Grammar

Nouns

Countable

a store / stores
a city / cities
a person / people

Uncountable

architecture
weather
traffic

1 Match each question with the most appropriate response.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) How's the weather? | 1 It's a mixture of old and new. |
| b) What are the stores like? | 2 They're really friendly. |
| c) What are the people like? | 3 They're too expensive. |
| d) What's the architecture like? | 4 It's hot and humid. |

2 Complete the table with the nouns in the box.

~~movie theater~~ ~~nightlife~~ park person public transportation restaurant traffic

Singular form	Plural form	Countable or uncountable?
movie theater nightlife	movie theaters —	countable uncountable

Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

- How do you make plural forms of these nouns: *store, bus, church, city, country, leaf*?
 - Which countable noun in the table has an irregular plural form?
 - How do you make plural forms of these nouns: *man, woman, child, foot, tooth*?
- 3 Work with your partner. Note down the names of two cities or villages you know well. Ask each other questions about the places you have noted down.
What's the nightlife like? It's great! There are lots of bars and clubs.

Vocabulary & Pronunciation

1 Complete the following sets (A, B, and C). Underline the stressed syllable in each word.

A		B		C	
Country	Nationality	Country	Nationality	Country	Nationality
<u>Cuba</u>	C_____	E_____	Egyptian	<u>China</u>	C_____
M_____	<u>Mexican</u>	<u>Italy</u>	I_____	V_____	<u>Vietnamese</u>
B_____	<u>Brazilian</u>	<u>Chile</u>	C_____	P_____	<u>Portuguese</u>
Argentina	A_____	C_____	Canadian	<u>Japan</u>	J_____

1.13 Listen, check, and repeat. What do you notice about the word stress in each set?

2 Write down six other countries you know and their nationalities. Mark the stress.

Which countries would you most like to visit? Tell your partner.

Speaking

1 Work in small groups. Do you agree with these statements?

Argentinian wine is the best in the world. Japanese cars are the best in the world.

2 Write similar statements which you all agree on. Combine a nationality with a noun from the box (or your own ideas).

beer chocolate coffee colleges fashion food men movies
nightlife perfume rock music soccer players watches women

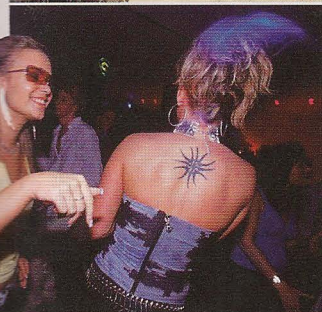
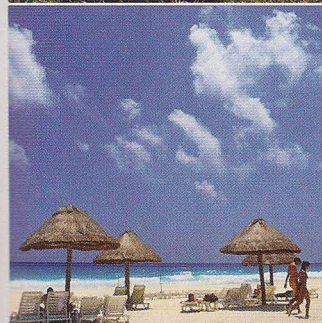
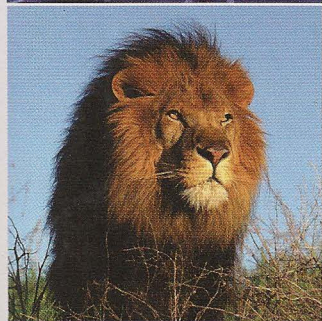
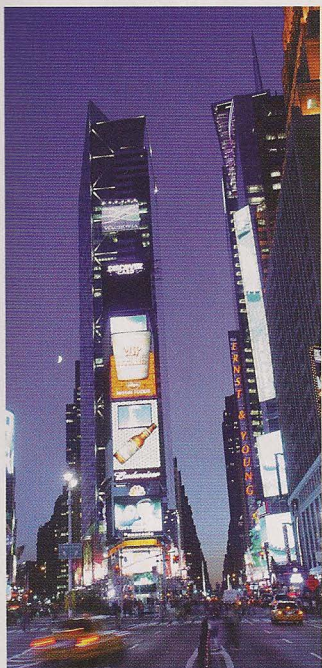
Mexican beer is the best in the world.

Compare your statements with other groups.



Reading

- 1 Read the four fifty-word descriptions of vacation destinations in this competition. List them in order (1 = the place you would *most* like to go to; 4 = the place you would *least* like to go to). Explain your choices to a partner.
- 2 Read the *How to enter* section and do Part A and Part B.
- 3 Check your answers to Part A at the bottom of the page and compare your descriptions with other people in the class. Choose a class winner!



WIN A

Dream vacation FOR TWO!

The winner of our exciting competition can choose a dream vacation for two in one of these fabulous destinations.

New York

This is the best place on earth for shopping. No, it isn't Hong Kong – Hong Kong is too crowded. Not Dubai – Dubai is too hot. Not even Paris – Paris is too expensive! Our shopping heaven is New York. We shopped till we dropped and then ate delicious noodles in Chinatown. (50 words)

Kenya

Now I understand why people fall in love with Africa. The people are friendly and welcoming. The scenery is spectacular. And the best thing is the lions. No, wait, the flamingos, or maybe the hippos. OK, everything is great, and I want to go back there as soon as possible. (50 words)

Cancún

Are you looking for excitement and adventure? Well, don't come to Cancún on the Yucatán Peninsula. Here you'll find peace and quiet, beautiful beaches, perfect weather, and the best welcome in Mexico. Oh, and you can go scuba diving if you like! Personally, I prefer to relax on the beach. (50 words)

Iceland

Iceland, the land of ice and fire, is full of contrasts. The air is freezing, but the hot springs are ... well, hot. Reykjavik, the capital, is small, but the nightlife is buzzing. It's a very long way from the rest of Europe, but Iceland is completely up-to-date in every way. (50 words)

HOW TO ENTER

Part A

To enter this fabulous competition and win a dream vacation for two, complete the following sentences with option a, b, or c.

- 1 The official language of Brazil is ...
a Portuguese b French
c Italian
- 2 Vienna is the capital of ...
a Austria b Germany
c Russia
- 3 The third-largest country in the world is ...
a China b Argentina
c Australia
- 4 The yen is the currency of ...
a Japan b China
c Korea
- 5 The Alhambra Palace is in ...
a Egypt b Spain c Mexico
- 6 Madagascar is an island off the coast of ...
a Britain b Africa
c Australia

Part B

Now write a review of the best place you've been to. Use exactly 50 words!

Send your answers before April 1 to Dream Vacation, P.O. Box 437, Stowe, VT 56720.

(Part A answers: 1a, 2a, 2a, 3a, 4a, 5b, 6b)

Reading

1 Complete the following description of a country. Use the nouns in the box.

cars cigarettes coffee hours ~~meat~~ noise people sleep wine

Everything's wrong here!

They do everything wrong here! They eat way too much (1) *meat* and they eat it at 11:00 p.m. Yesterday we went out to dinner at 11:30 p.m. and we had trouble getting a table! At 1:00 a.m. we were still eating, and the restaurant was still half-full!

They smoke too many (2) _____. They drink lots of strong (3) _____, and a lot of (4) _____.

They spend too many (5) _____ in the sun and they certainly don't get enough (6) _____. One Saturday night we went to a disco at 2:00 a.m. and were surprised to see that there were only a few (7) _____ on the dance floor. Then the DJ arrived at 3:00 a.m. and the party began!

There are way too many (8) _____ in the cities, and there's too much (9) _____ everywhere!

They do everything wrong here, but the quality of life is great, and people really know how to enjoy themselves. I don't want to go home!



2 Which country do you think it is? Could it be your country? Why? Why not?

Grammar

Quantity expressions

With **countable** nouns

How **many** people?

too many, lots, a lot, not many, a few, not enough

With **uncountable** nouns

How **much** traffic?

too much, a lot, lots, not much, a little, not enough

1 Complete the headings for each category (A, B, C) with *countable* or *uncountable*.

A: With _____ nouns	B: With _____ nouns	C: With _____ and _____ nouns
How many? (way) too many not many (only) a few	How much? (way) too much not much (only) a little	not enough a lot (of) lots (of)

2 Underline the correct quantity expression in each of these sentences.

- a) I don't eat much / many bread. e) I eat a lot of / a little cookies.
b) I eat a few / lots of fruit. f) I don't drink enough / many water.
c) I drink way too much / way too many coffee.
d) I don't eat much / enough vegetables.

How many of the sentences are true for you? Rewrite the sentences so that they are all true for you. Compare your sentences with a partner.

3 Use the table to ask your partner questions about daily habits. Add your own nouns and verbs to make different questions.

	Nouns		Verbs	
How much How many	chocolate emails exercise friends meat money people sleep tea text messages wine	do you	call do drink eat get have make see send spend	every day?

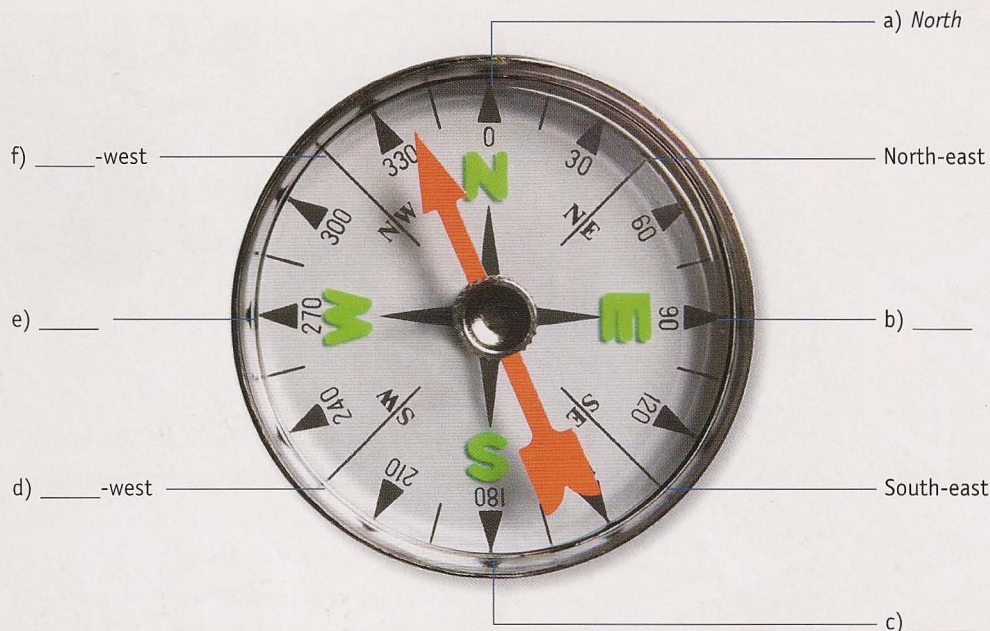
How much chocolate do you eat every day? Not much.

How many emails do you get every day? Lots. Way too many!

4 Grammar Extra 2 page 128. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

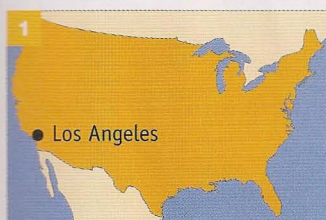
Vocabulary

1 Complete the labeling of the compass.



2 Match the descriptions (a–d) with the cities on the maps (1–4).

- a) It's central.
- b) It's in the east.
- c) It's on the west coast.
- d) It's in the south-east.



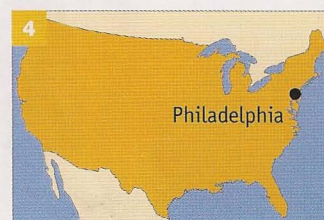
▲ The USA



▲ Colombia



▲ Britain



▲ The USA

3 **Pairwork** Student A: page 116 Student B: page 121

Speaking: anecdote

1 1.14 Listen to Emma talking about the best place she has ever visited. Read the questions and check (✓) the ones she gives information about.

- a) Where is the place? ✓
- b) When did you first go there?
- c) Were you on vacation?
- d) Where did you stay?
- e) What did you do there?
- f) How many times have you visited the place?
- g) When was the last time?
- h) What do you like most about this place?
- i) Are there any things you don't like about this place?
- j) Would you like to live there? Why? Why not?



2 You're going to tell your partner about the best place you have ever visited.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about the best place you have ever visited.

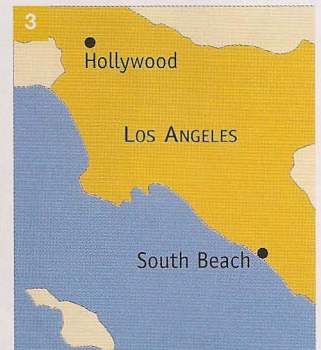
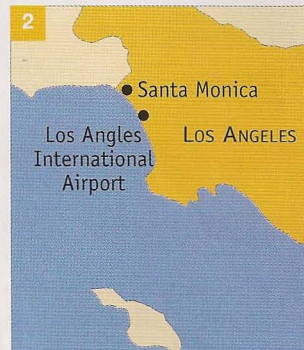
Useful phrases

- 1 1.15 Listen and read the conversation. What nationalities are Josh, Matt, and Erica?



Josh: Matt, this is Erica.
 Matt: Nice to meet you, Erica.
 Erica: Nice to meet you, too.
 Matt: You're not American, are you? Where are you from?
 Erica: I live in New York, but I'm originally from England.
 Matt: Oh, where exactly?
 Erica: A small town just outside Manchester.
 Matt: Manchester? Is that near London?
 Erica: No, Manchester's in the north. And where are you from?
 Matt: Well, I live in New York, too, but I'm actually from Los Angeles.
 Josh: Hey, I'm from LA, too. Which part of the city are you from?
 Matt: Santa Monica, not far from the airport.
 Josh: Oh, great. My family lives in Hollywood.
 Erica: Wow, really?
 Josh: No, I'm kidding. They live in the south. Near South Beach.

- 2 Match each person with one of the maps below. Put a cross (X) on each map to show exactly where each person comes from.



- 3 Complete the useful phrases with the words in parentheses.

- Where are you from? (are) *Where are you from?*
- I'm originally England. (from)
- Where? (exactly)
- A small town outside Manchester. (just)
- Manchester's in the north. (in)
- I live in New York, but I'm from Los Angeles. (actually)
- Which part of the city are you from? (you)
- Not far from the airport. (from)
- They live in the south. (the)

- 1.16 Listen, check, and repeat the useful phrases.

- 4 Write a conversation between you and a partner about where you come from and where you live now.

Vocabulary Extra

Places

1 Match the places in the picture with the words.

- ☒ 6 art gallery
- ☐ castle
- ☐ church
- ☐ library
- ☐ mosque
- ☐ museum
- ☐ parking lot
- ☐ shopping mall
- ☐ square
- ☐ theater

2 Think about the last time you were in some of the different places in Exercise 1. Ask a partner.

When was the last time you were in an art gallery?
I'm not sure. Maybe when I went to Mexico City a few years ago.



Adjectives

1 Look at the adjectives to describe cities. Decide which are positive and which are negative.

beautiful big boring crowded dirty dull exciting expensive fabulous
interesting modern noisy polluted romantic spectacular

Positive: beautiful, ... Negative: boring, ...

2 What are the five best adjectives to describe *your* town or city? Compare your answers with your partner.

Focus on like

1 Match the uses of *like* (a-f) with the example sentences (1-6).

Uses of <i>like</i>	Examples
a) <i>What + be + somebody/something + like</i> = asking for a description	1 We like going out every Saturday night. I like cooking but I don't like doing the dishes.
b) verb + <i>like</i> = similar to somebody/something	2 I really like <i>Harry Potter</i> . I've seen all the movies. I don't like her very much and she doesn't like me.
c) <i>like (+ this/that)</i> = in this or that way	3 She looks like her mother. They have the same eyes. It's plastic, but it feels like leather.
d) <i>like + noun/pronoun</i> = somebody/something pleases you	4 "What's your new teacher like?" "He's really nice." "What was Boston like?" "It was great."
e) <i>like + ing</i> = enjoy an activity	5 "Would you like a drink?" "Yes. I'd like a glass of cold water, please."
f) <i>would like + noun</i> = want something	6 Click on the "send" icon, like this. Cut the paper into squares. No, not like that, like this!

2 Write your own example sentence for each use of *like*.

Love

Grammar Simple past and past progressive. Adverbs of manner

Vocabulary Relationship expressions. Narrative linkers. *ed/ing* adjectives. *get*

Useful phrases Things in common

Listening

- 1  1.17 Listen to Walt and Betty talking about their relationship and answer the questions.

- When did they first meet?
- When did they get married to each other?



▲ Walt fifty years ago

▲ Walt and Betty now

▲ Betty fifty years ago

- 2 Write *He*, *She*, or *They* in these sentences about Walt and Betty's story.

- They* first met in Annapolis and dated for three months.
- _____ moved to different places and lost touch with each other.
- _____ was married to another person for forty-eight years.
- _____ got divorced after thirty years of marriage.
- _____ went to Annapolis with her grandson and visited all the old places.
- _____ thought about Walt and wanted to find him.
- _____ wrote a letter to the local newspaper.
- _____ had a cousin in Annapolis who told him about the letter.
- _____ met soon after that and moved in together.
- _____ got married – fifty years after they first met!

Listen again and check your answers.

Vocabulary & Speaking

- 1 Complete the expressions in the sentences below with the words in the box.

get have live lose love

- The best age to *get* married is twenty-five for women and twenty-seven for men.
- The main reason for getting married is to _____ children.
- A big difference in age isn't a problem for a couple if they are in _____.
- It's a good idea for a couple to _____ together for a few years before getting married.
- It doesn't matter if children _____ touch with one of their parents.

- 2 Work in small groups. Discuss the statements in Exercise 1. Do you agree or disagree?

Vocabulary

- 1 Match each of the verb phrases in the box with an appropriate picture (a-d).

flirt with somebody have a crush on somebody have a fight move in together



- 2 Put the stages of a relationship in a logical order (1-12). Add or take away stages if you think it's necessary.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| a) You get married. | e) You move in together. | i) You have a fight. |
| b) You flirt with somebody. | f) You have children. | j) You kiss. |
| c) You call somebody. | g) You meet the parents. | k) You split up. |
| d) You have a crush on somebody. | h) You date somebody. | l) You fall in love. |

Compare your ideas with a partner.

Grammar

Simple past

He **went** to Annapolis.
He **didn't** go to Delaware.

Did he **go** to Chicago?
Yes, he **did**.
No, he **didn't**.

- 1 Write the affirmative and negative simple past forms of the verbs in the box.

be can get go have flirt kiss like meet move study want

be – was/were, wasn't/weren't

- 2 Write true sentences – affirmative or negative – with the verbs in parentheses.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| a) My mother and father (meet) at college. | d) I (go) skiing last winter. |
| b) My grandparents (get) married in a church. | e) I (study) German at school. |
| c) I (have) a big breakfast this morning. | f) I (be) very busy yesterday. |

Make questions and ask your partner.

Did your mother and father meet at college? No, they didn't.

- 3 **Grammar Extra 3, Part 1** page 130. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Pronunciation

- 1 Complete these irregular verb sets. Label the past forms in each group (1-3) with these sounds: /æ/, /e/, /ɔ/.

1	2	3
Infinitive Past: /e/	Infinitive Past: _____	Infinitive Past: _____
keep kept	begin c) _____	bring brought
mean a) <i>meant</i>	drink d) _____	e) _____ bought
b) _____ met	ring rang	catch f) _____

1.18 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 2 Add the verbs in the box to the correct groups in the table in Exercise 1.

fight read sing sleep swim teach

1.19 Listen, check, and repeat.

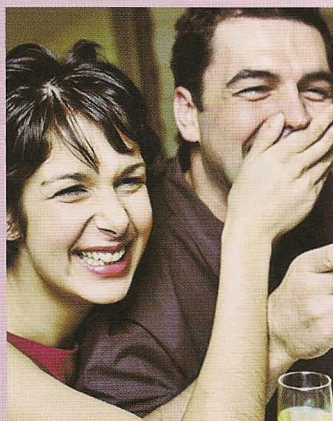
Listening

1 Read about a TV game show called *Get Personal* and answer these questions.

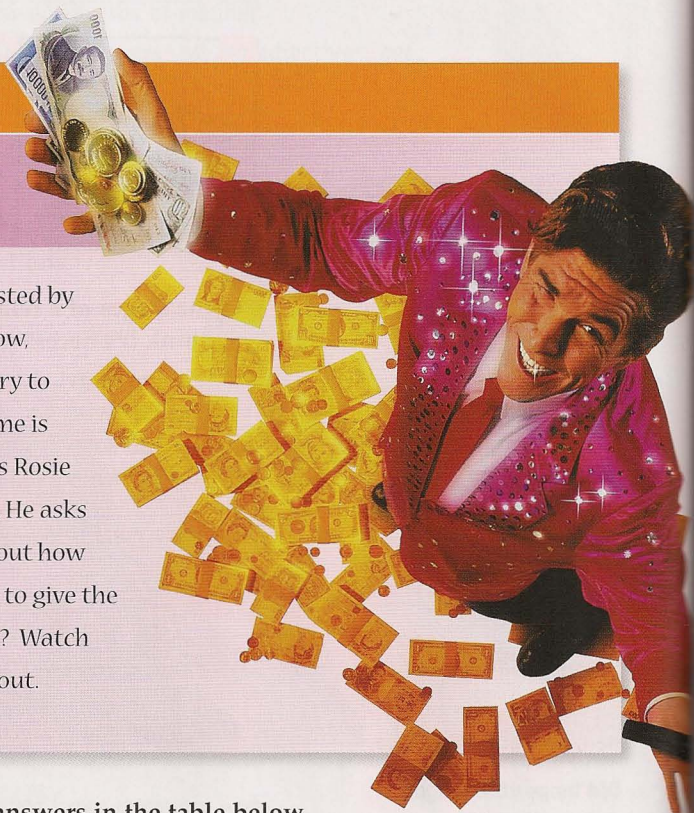
- Who are the two people playing *Get Personal* tonight?
- How much is the prize money?
- How can they win?

Tonight on OTV at 8:30 p.m.

Get Personal



Game show *Get Personal* is hosted by Bobby Brown. In tonight's show, contestants Rosie and Dave try to win the \$10,000 prize. The game is very simple. Bobby interviews Rosie and Dave in separate studios. He asks them the same questions about how they first met, and they have to give the same answers. Can they do it? Watch OTV at 8:30 tonight and find out.



2 1.20 Read the questions and answers in the table below. Listen and choose the answers (a, b, or c) that Rosie gives.

Questions	Rosie's answers		Dave's answers
1 How did you first meet?	a) She was a nurse. He was a patient.	b) She was a patient. He was a nurse.	✓ / X
	c) She was a doctor. He was a nurse.		
2 What time of day was it?	a) Early morning.	b) Early afternoon.	✓ / X
	c) Early evening.		
3 How was the weather?	a) The sun was shining.	b) It was raining.	✓ / X
	c) It was snowing.		
4 What were you both wearing?	She was wearing ...	He was wearing ...	
	a) a white coat.	a) blue pajamas.	✓ / X
	b) a nurse's uniform.	b) green pajamas.	
	c) a nightgown.	c) pink pajamas.	
5 Who spoke first and what did they say?	a) She said: "How are you feeling?"	b) He said: "I'm going to throw up."	✓ / X
	c) He said: "I feel terrible."		

3 1.21 Listen to Dave answering the same questions. Circle the ✓ if he gives the same answer as Rosie. Circle the X if he gives a different answer.

How many points did Rosie and Dave score out of five?

4 Think about your closest friend. How many of the questions from *Get Personal* could you answer? Discuss with a partner.

Grammar

Past progressive

I **was**

You **were**

He **was**

She **was working**.

It **was**

We **were**

They **were**

Were you working?

Yes, I **was**.

No, I **wasn't**.

- 1 Look at these extracts from Bobby Brown's interview with Rosie. Answer the questions (a–d) with *Simple past* or *Past progressive*.

I was working as a nurse, and Dave came into the hospital for an operation.

Yes, it was raining when I arrived at work.

What were you wearing when you saw each other for the first time?

- What tense is used for the verbs *come*, *arrive*, and *see*? *Simple past*.
- What tense is used for the verbs *work*, *rain*, and *wear*?
- Which tense describes something that was in progress when another event happened?
- Which tense describes an event that happened at a particular moment in the past?

- 2 **Pairwork** Student A: page 116 Student B: page 121

- 3 1.22 Look at the pictures (1–5) and listen to the recordings. Work with a partner. Write sentences about Jake and Fiona to describe the five situations.

1 *Jake was taking a shower when his cell phone rang.*

- 4 **Grammar Extra 3, Part 2** page 130. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Reading

- 1 Complete the funny story with past progressive or simple past verb forms. Predict the ending of the story.

A Hollywood director (1 shoot) *was shooting* an important movie in the desert when an old Native American man (2 come) *came* up to him and said, "Tomorrow, rain." The next day it rained.

A few days later, the director (3 talk) *was talking* to the cameraman about the next day's shooting. The Native American went up to him and said, "Tomorrow, storm."

He was right again, and he saved the director thousands of dollars.

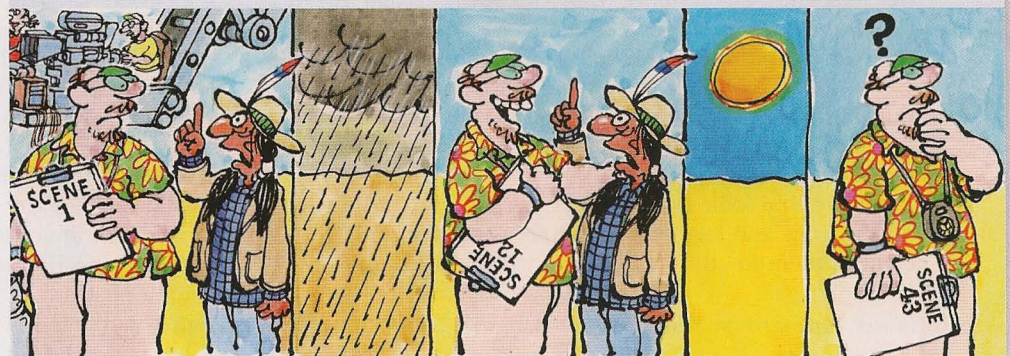
The director was very impressed and (4 give) *gave* the old man a job.

The old man (5 continue) *continued* to predict the weather correctly, but then he (6 not come) *didn't come* for three weeks.

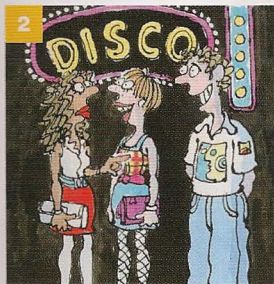
The director (7 plan) *was planning* to shoot an important scene and he needed good weather. So he (8 go) *went* to look for the Native American.

When he (9 find) *found* the old man, he said, "Listen, I have to shoot an important scene tomorrow. What will the weather be like?"

The old man (10 shake) *shook* his head and said, "....."



- 2 1.23 Listen and check your answers.



Reading

1 Look at the pictures and complete the noun phrases with the words in the box.

bag club ~~paint~~ party scissors wine



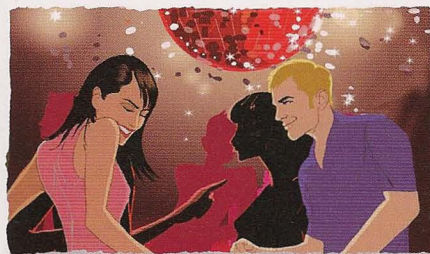
a) a can of *paint*



b) a dinner _____



c) a pair of _____



d) a night _____



e) a plastic _____



f) a bottle of _____

2 1.24 Read the stories and match the things (a-f) in Exercise 1 to the appropriate story. What is the importance of each thing in the stories?

REVENGE *is sweet*

When Sally Moon found out that her husband was having an affair, she didn't leave him. She thought it was better to be unhappily married than not married at all. But her husband didn't
5 hide his affair, and this made her feel really bad.

One day, she was driving home when she saw his car parked outside his lover's house. She was angry and she decided to get her
10 revenge. She quickly drove home, put a can of paint into her car, and drove to the lover's house.

Then she poured thick white paint all over her husband's beautiful, new, black car.

15 Next, she carefully took his collection of fine wines from the basement. That night, she went around the town where she lived, and quietly placed a bottle of wine outside each house. She left the other bottles on the statue
20 in the main square.

Finally, she took a pair of scissors and cut off the arms and legs of all his suits – thirty-eight of them in all.

DINNER *BY MAIL*

Last year, I dated Patricia for four months. We were very different. I always arrived early; she always arrived late. I was very neat; she wasn't. But to be honest, I found the differences rather
5 attractive.

At first, she was only fifteen or twenty minutes late. But she got later and later.

At the end of August, it was my birthday. I'm a good cook, so I decided to have a dinner
10 party and I invited four friends.

That evening, my four friends arrived on time, but unsurprisingly Patricia wasn't there at eight o'clock. But then she wasn't there at nine o'clock, nine thirty, or ten o'clock.

15 This was extremely late, even for Patricia. So I called her on her cell phone. When she answered, music was playing loudly in the background. "Where are you?" I shouted angrily. "I'm at a night club," she shouted back. I was mad. I went into the kitchen and put her
20 dinner into a plastic bag.

The next morning, I mailed it to her with a note saying, "Here's your dinner." A week later,
25 I got a postcard from Patricia. It said, "Too much salt."

3 Which story do you prefer? Tell your partner why.

Vocabulary & Speaking

- 1 Find and underline the time adverbials from the box in the stories on page 24.

A week later At first At the end of August Finally Last year
Next One day That evening That night The next morning Then

List the time adverbials in the order in which they appear in the stories.

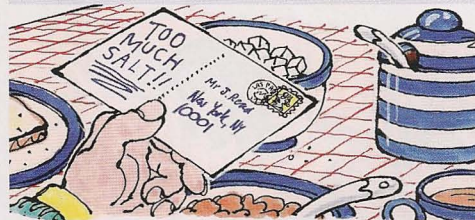
Revenge is sweet

- a) *One day* d) _____
b) _____ e) _____
c) _____



Dinner by mail

- 1 *Last year* 4 _____
2 _____ 5 _____
3 _____ 6 _____



- 2 Choose a story and use the time adverbials in Exercise 1 to retell the story to a partner. Don't look at the text on page 24.

Grammar

Adverbs of manner

Add *ly* to most adjectives:
badly, carefully, angrily

Exceptions:

well, early, late, fast

- 1 Work with a partner. Complete the tables with adverbs or adjectives from the stories on page 24.

Revenge is sweet

Adjective	Adverb
a) unhappy	<i>unhappily</i>
b) _____	badly
c) _____	angrily
d) quick	_____
e) _____	beautifully
f) careful	_____
g) quiet	_____

Dinner by mail

Adjective	Adverb
1 <i>different</i>	differently
2 early	_____
3 late	_____
4 _____	neatly
5 _____	attractively
6 _____	well
7 loud	_____

Answer these questions.

- How do you make adverbs from most adjectives?
- How do you make adverbs from adjectives ending in *y*?
- What are the adverbs for the adjectives *good*, *early*, *late*?

- 2 Rewrite these sentences in the usual order.

- subject + verb + object + adverb
- I / very quickly / eat / my lunch I eat my lunch very quickly.
 - drive / my car / I / very slowly
 - plan / my days / very carefully / I
 - I / my money / spend / very intelligently
 - play / I / tennis / very badly
 - very regularly / clean / I / my house
 - I / speak / very well / English

How many sentences are true for you? Rewrite the sentences so that they are all true for you.

Compare your sentences with your partner.

Useful phrases

- 1 1.25 Listen to a conversation between a man (Tim) and a woman (Anna) on a train. Do they know each other?



- 2 Are these sentences true or false?

- The man and woman are going to Atlanta.
- She's reading *Pride and Prejudice*.
- They both like Keira Knightley.
- They're both going to see Johnny Depp's new movie tomorrow night.
- They're both single.

Listen again and check your answers.

- 3 Complete the useful phrases in the table using the phrases in the box.

Me, too Neither do I Oh, I did So am I So do I

Comment	Agree	Disagree
a) I didn't like the movie.	Neither did I. / Me, neither.	(1) ____ .
b) I really like Keira Knightley.	(2) ____ . / Me, too.	Oh, I don't.
c) I think she's really good.	So do I. / (3) ____ .	Oh, I don't.
d) I'm going to see Johnny Depp's new movie.	(4) ____ . / Me, too.	Oh, I'm not.
e) I don't know what time it starts.	(5) ____ . / Me, neither.	Oh, I do.

- 1.26 Listen, check, and repeat the useful phrases.

- 4 Write true comments using these sentence beginnings.

I think ...
 I really like ...
 I don't like ...
 I'm going ...
 I'm not going ...
 Yesterday evening, I ...
 Last weekend, I didn't ...

- 5 Work with a partner. Take turns reading out your sentences. Agree or disagree with your partner's comments.

Vocabulary Extra

Adjectives ending in *ed* or *ing*

1 Match the pictures with the pairs of adjectives.

- ☒ 5 annoyed / annoying
☐ bored / boring
☐ confused / confusing
☐ depressed / depressing
☐ embarrassed / embarrassing
☐ excited / exciting
☐ frightened / frightening
☐ interested / interesting
☐ surprised / surprising
☐ tired / tiring

2 Underline the correct adjective.

- 1 The students are boring / bored.
 2 The teacher is interesting / interested.
 3 The score is depressing / depressed.
 4 The daughter is embarrassing / embarrassed.
 5 The dog is annoying / annoyed.
 6 The people are frightening / frightened.
 7 The boy is surprising / surprised.
 8 The race is exciting / excited.
 9 The man is tiring / tired.
 10 The map is confusing / confused.



Focus on *get*

1 Match the uses of *get* (a-e) with the examples (1-5).

Some uses of <i>get</i>	Examples
a) <i>get</i> + adjective = become	1 Did you get my text message? I got my new shoes on sale. She's trying to get a new job.
b) phrasal verbs with <i>get</i>	2 It doesn't get dark till 10:00 p.m. in the summer. He's getting better at English. This room never gets warm enough.
c) <i>get</i> + noun = buy, obtain, or receive	3 What time do you get to work? I got home very late last night. We'll never get there in time.
d) <i>get</i> = arrive	4 It's time to get moving. They got married in a hotel. I always have breakfast before I get dressed.
e) Expressions with <i>get</i> + present/past participle	5 He never gets up before 10:00 a.m. We don't get along with our neighbors. The whole family gets together at Thanksgiving.

2 Use a dictionary. Find and write your own example sentence for each use of *get*.

Review A

► Grammar Extra pages 126–131

Grammar

- 1 Complete the questions with the correct auxiliaries and name the tenses.

am/is/are do/does did have/has

- Have you ever been to Chicago? *Present perfect*
- _____ you like jazz?
- Where _____ you go on vacation last year?
- Where _____ you going to go on vacation this year?
- Where _____ you living now?
- _____ you ever seen Machu Picchu?
- What _____ you do for a living?

Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 2 Complete the sentences with *look(s)* or *look(s) like*.

- I *look like* my aunt.
- My dad _____ young for his age.
- I _____ Brazilian.
- I _____ a famous person.
- I _____ a student.
- My mom _____ friendly.

Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

- 3 Underline the correct words.



Di: Rome is (1) such a / so great city, isn't it?
 Jo: I don't like it. It's (2) too / very hot for me.
 Di: The weather's perfect. It's really (3) too / very nice.
 Jo: But the streets are (4) such a / so crowded.
 Di: Yes, but it's (5) such a / so wonderful experience.
 Jo: Well, I'm not enjoying it. It's (6) too / very noisy!
 Di: Jo, don't be (7) such a / so boring. We're in a
 (8) too / very beautiful place. Come on, smile. ...

- 4 Complete the conversation with *lot*, *many*, or *much*.

Chris: How (1) *many* people live in your town?
 Rob: Not (2) _____. Around 20,000, maybe.
 Chris: And is there (3) _____ traffic?
 Rob: Yeah! Too (4) _____! The streets are always full of cars. What about your city?
 Chris: There are a (5) _____ of people – around a million – but there isn't (6) _____ traffic. We've got good public transportation.
 Rob: How (7) _____ movie theaters do you have?
 Chris: We have a (8) _____. Maybe forty or fifty. You?
 Rob: Wow! We don't have (9) _____. Only three, in fact.
 Chris: So what else can you do in the evenings?
 Rob: We go to a bar. It's a small town, but there are a (10) _____ of bars.

- 5 Write one verb in the simple past and the other in the past progressive for each sentence.

- I (work) *was working* in Ohio when I (meet) *met* Tony for the first time.
- It (rain) _____ when Sara (got) _____ home.
- We (have) _____ lunch when you (call) _____.
- You (talk) _____ when I (come) _____ in.
- Joe (cook) _____ when he (cut) _____ his finger.
- Dave and Becky (watch) _____ TV when the baby (wake) _____ up.

- 6 Change the adjectives in the box into adverbs and use them to complete the sentences.

careful early good quiet ~~regular~~

- I wash my car *regularly* – every Saturday.
- I don't cook very _____ – everyone hates my food!
- I usually speak very _____ – no one can hear me!
- I always get up _____ – at 6:00 a.m.
- I do my work _____ – I never make mistakes!

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Compare with your partner.

- 7 Find the mistake! Cross out the incorrect sentence.

- ~~What means your name?~~
 - What does your name mean?
- Did they been to Miami?
 - Have they ever been to Miami?
- What was Florida like?
 - How was Florida like?
- We eat way too much chocolate.
 - We eat way too many chocolate.
- You eat your food very slowly.
 - You eat very slowly your food.
- They speak Spanish very good.
 - They speak Spanish very well.

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the text about Gary and his family with the words in the box.

brother-in-law daughter half-brother
half-sister nephew niece ~~stepfather~~
stepmother uncle



Hi, I'm Gary, and this is my family. My dad, Bill, and my mom, Lisa, are divorced. Dad is single, but Mom remarried. Her husband – my (1) *stepfather* – is named Phil. Mom and Phil have two children, Jack and Cathy – my (2) _____ and my (3) _____. Phil and his ex-wife, Eva, have a (4) _____, Debra. My mom is Debra's (5) _____. My sister's name is Ann. She's married to Ted – (6) my _____. They have two children. Brennah is my (7) _____ and Brendan is my (8) _____, and, of course, I'm their favorite (9) _____. They're great children.

- 2 Match the two halves of the questions about names.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| a) What are your _____ | 1 maiden name? |
| b) What do your friends _____ | 2 initials? |
| c) What name do you _____ | 3 name you after? |
| d) Who did your parents _____ | 4 like best? |
| e) What's your mother's _____ | 5 call you? |

Answer the questions. Work with a partner and compare your answers.

- 3 Complete the names of places you might find in a city.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) art gallery | f) f____nt____n |
| b) br____dg____ | g) l____br____ry |
| c) c____n____l | h) m____s____m |
| d) p____rk____ng l____t | i) p____rk |
| e) c____stl____ | j) sh____pp____ng m____ll |

- 4 Write an adjective from the box next to each definition.

beautiful ~~crowded~~ dull expensive
polluted romantic spectacular

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| a) full of people | <i>crowded</i> | e) costs a lot of money |
| b) too much smoke/traffic | | f) very good-looking |
| c) not interesting | | g) dramatic and exciting |
| d) ideal for lovers | | |

- 5 Write the nationality in the correct column.

Argentina ~~Brazil~~ Canada ~~China~~ Egypt
Italy Japan Mexico Portugal Vietnam

-an	-ese
<i>Brazilian</i>	<i>Chinese</i>

- 6 Look at the map of Australia and write sentences about the places using the words in the box.

central east ~~north~~ north-east south
south-east south-west



Darwin is in the north. Cairns is in ...

- 7 Match the two halves of the phrases that describe stages of a relationship.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| a) flirt _____ | 1 in love |
| b) date _____ | 2 with somebody |
| c) fall _____ | 3 children |
| d) move _____ | 4 in together |
| e) get _____ | 5 up |
| f) have _____ | 6 somebody |
| g) split _____ | 7 married |

Pronunciation

- 1 Look at some words from Units 1-3. Say the words and add them to the table.

~~annoyed~~ beautiful ~~cathedral~~ central
Chinese chocolate cousin Cuba
dessert Egyptian extremely finally
granddaughter surprised together
uniform

A: ☐	B: ☐	C: ☐	D: ☐
<i>annoyed</i>	<i>central</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>cathedral</i>

- 2 Underline the stressed syllable in each word.

1.27 Listen, check, and repeat.

Reading & Listening

- 1 1.28 Read the descriptions of two friendships and answer the questions.

- How did these best friends meet?
- How often do they see each other?

My best friend



Liz Krebbs

My best friend is Deb Evans. We met on an internet chat site in 2003. We both liked chatting about music and fashion, and then we discovered that we live only ten miles from each other. We talked online all the time, and one day we arranged to meet in a café. I felt really nervous, because I'm shy with new people, but we liked each other immediately. We are very similar. We both lived abroad when we were children, and we both had parents who got divorced when we were young. We both have busy lives, but we still talk every day on the telephone and we see each other once a week. I think Deb's a fantastic person. She's very generous and a lot of fun. I'm so happy I met her!

Greg Johnson

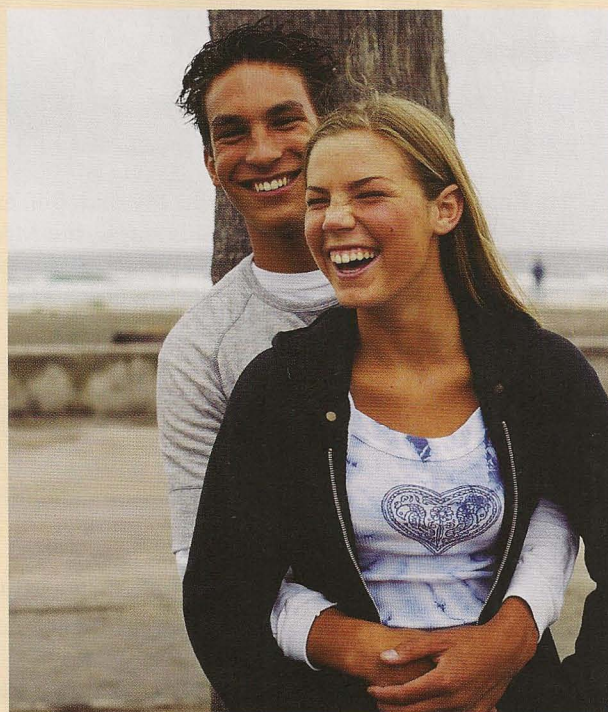
Jim Engelhart is my best friend. We met at elementary school. His real name is James, but everybody calls him Jim. He sat behind me in class. We were both jokers at school and we got into trouble a lot! When we were teenagers, we didn't spend much time with each other. Jim was a punk rocker, and I liked rock music. Then, after we graduated, I went to college and we didn't see each other for five years. But after that, I moved back to our home town and met Jim again. Now we see each other every month. He's just the same as twenty years ago. He made me laugh then, and he makes me laugh now.



- 2 Read the descriptions again. Are these statements true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- Liz and Deb live ten miles from each other. *True.*
- Liz and Deb didn't like each other at first.
- Liz is very different from Deb.
- Liz likes Deb because she's generous and fun.
- Greg and Jim were always very good students at school.
- Greg and Jim were both punk rockers when they were teenagers.
- Greg thinks Jim is the same now as twenty years ago.

- 3 1.29 Listen to the conversation between Carol and Jennifer. What nationality is Matt?



Listen again and underline the correct information.

Jennifer's boyfriend: Matt

- Where Jennifer and Matt met:
(1) At school / At college.
- When they met:
(2) Five years ago / Ten years ago.
- First impression:
(3) She didn't like him. / She thought he was very interesting.
- Things they really like doing together:
(4) Windsurfing / Scuba diving.

- 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- What did Jennifer and Matt do at the beach?
- Where did Matt go after college?
- Why did they go to Egypt?
- Has Jennifer been to Australia?
- When did Matt come back to the USA?
- Where are Jennifer and Matt going to travel to next?

Writing & Speaking

1 Work with a partner. Match the questions (a–e) with the answers in note form (1–5).

- a) What's your best friend's name? 3
- b) Where and when did you meet him/her? 2
- c) What was your first impression of him/her? 1
- d) What do you like about him/her? 4
- e) What do you like doing together? 5

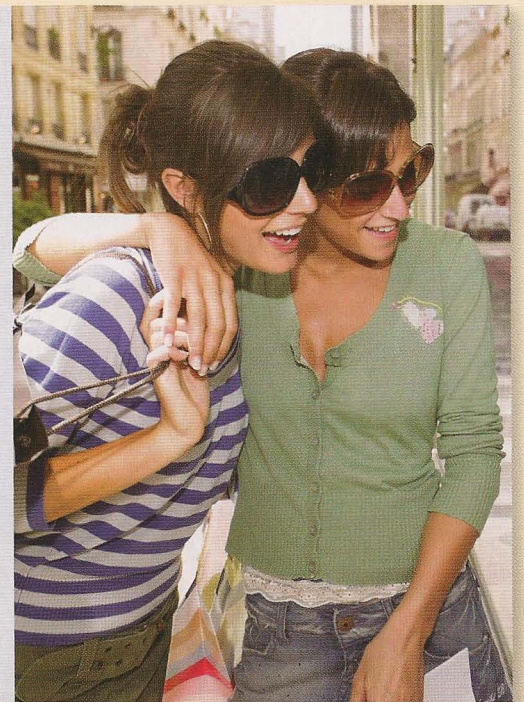
- 1 relaxed, good listener, funny
- 2 high school - 1st day
- 3 Adriana Costa
- 4 theater, museums, shopping
- 5 she knew everybody

2 Match the parts of the text below to the questions (a–e) in Exercise 1.

How I met

my best friend

- ☐ We met on the first day of high school. I was very shy, and I felt nervous on my first day.
- ☐ We are very different. I'm pretty serious. But Adriana is a very relaxed person, and she's a really good listener. And she's the funniest person I've ever met. We laugh all the time.
- ☒ a My best friend is Adriana Costa.
- ☐ We do everything together! We both like the theater and art. We visit museums and we love shopping!
- ☐ Adriana knew everybody, and everybody liked her. I liked her too, but I thought she was too cool, and I was too shy. But she still liked me! I was sitting alone in the classroom when she sat down next to me. She was very nice to me, and we became good friends.



3 How did you meet your best friend? Write answers in note form to the questions in Exercise 1.

4 Tell your partner about how you met your best friend.

5 Write about how you met your best friend. Give longer answers to the questions in Exercise 1.



1.30 Song: Stand By Me

Shopping

Grammar Adverbs of frequency. Verb patterns. Simple present and present progressive

Vocabulary Collocations: *a bunch of ...*, *a box of ...*, etc. Clothes and accessories

Useful phrases In a clothing store

Speaking

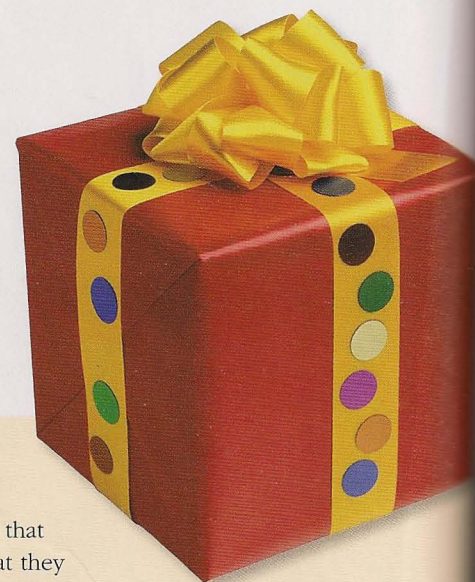
Work in small groups. Discuss the questions.

- When do you give gifts?
- What's the best gift you've ever given or received?
- Which is easier: buying gifts for men or buying gifts for women?

Reading

1 Read this article and answer the questions.

- Did a man or woman write the article?
- Does he or she think men are good at choosing gifts?
- Does he or she think women are good at choosing gifts?
- What do women and men really want for their birthday? Do you agree?



What people really want for their birthday

It was my birthday recently and, as usual, I didn't get what I really wanted. I **usually** get a bunch of flowers, a cook book, a box of chocolates, and electronic gadgets. My family **always** asks me what I want, and I **always** tell them the same thing – I want a surprise. So this year I got flowers, a

cook book, chocolate, and gadgets. Flowers are nice but they **hardly ever** last for more than a week, and a real gift is something you can keep. I **always** look for the diamond ring hidden in the flowers, but it's **never there**.

Cook books are boring, and I hate getting chocolate because I'm **usually** on a diet.

But gadgets are the worst. Most women are not interested in gadgets. Men buy gadgets for women because men love gadgets.

But women are sensitive and intuitive so they **always** know the right thing to buy. Right? Wrong.

The big mistake that women make is that they

usually buy clothes. They buy clothes because they like them and they want other people to wear the clothes they like. "You **always** wear dark colors, and I want to change you, so I'm going to buy you a brightly colored tie or a pair of Mickey Mouse socks."

This is a big mistake. Men don't **usually** want brightly colored ties or silly socks. The word to remember when you're buying a gift for a male is *gadgets*. Men like anything digital, electronic, and fun.

For his last birthday, I gave my husband a small flashlight and a Swiss army knife. He was overjoyed.

It's very simple. You can't go wrong if you **always** remember the "J" word for women (that's "J" for jewelry) and the "G" word for men.

2 Rearrange the words below to make six statements from the article.

- A / can / real / you / something / is / gift / keep
A real gift is something you can keep.
- Cook / boring / books / are
- Most / in / are / interested / women / gadgets / not
- Women / and / intuitive / are / sensitive
- Men / usually / brightly / colored / want / don't / ties
- Men / fun / anything / like / electronic / digital / and

Do you agree with these statements? Discuss with a partner.

Vocabulary

- 1 A bunch of flowers is a collocation from the article on page 32. Match words from column A with words from column B to make similar collocations.

A

- a bunch of
- a box of
- a pair of
- a pack of
- a piece of
- a bottle of
- a jar of
- a can of

B

- socks / scissors / jeans
- cake / furniture / wood
- cigarettes / gum
- flowers / grapes / keys
- wine / perfume / whiskey
- beans / paint / tomatoes
- chocolates / matches / tissues
- jam / instant coffee / mayonnaise

- 2 Work with a partner. Discuss the questions about the things in Exercise 1.

- Have you ever given or received any of these things as a gift?
- Which things are common gifts in your country?
- Which things would be very strange or unusual gifts?

Pronunciation

- 1 1.31 Listen and repeat the plural forms in the table.

/s/, /z/, or /ɪz/ ?	Examples
A: /s/ after /p/, /k/, /f/, /t/, /θ/	<i>cakes, chips, suits</i>
B: /z/ after /b/, /g/, /v/, /d/, /ð/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /r/, and all vowel sounds	<i>clothes, rings, views</i>
C: /ɪz/ after /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/	<i>beaches, places, stages</i>

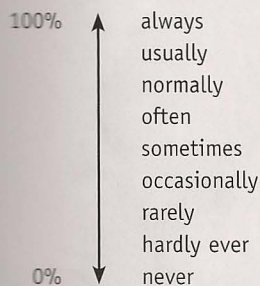
- 2 Add the plural forms of these nouns to the appropriate line in the table in Exercise 1.

bar /bar/ bridge /brɪdʒ/ bunch /bʌntʃ/ grape /greɪp/ key /ki/
 piece /piːs/ pot /pɒt/ sock /sɒk/ tie /taɪ/

- 1.32 Listen, check, and repeat.

Grammar

Adverbs of frequency



adverb before main verb
 We don't usually drive.

be before adverb
 I'm always tired.

- 1 Look at the highlighted examples of adverbs of frequency used in the article on page 32.

Are these sentences true or false?

- Adverbs of frequency come before the main part of the verb, but after auxiliary verbs.
 - Adverbs of frequency come after the verb *be*.
- 2 How well do you know the person sitting next to you? Add an adverb of frequency to these sentences to make them true. Write affirmative or negative sentences.
- He/She spends more than \$25 on a gift.
She rarely spends more than \$25 on a gift.
He doesn't usually spend more than \$25 on a gift.
 - He/She is positive about life.
 - He/She goes out on the weekend.
 - He/She is late for appointments.
 - He/She has lunch at home during the week.
 - He/She walks to school/work.

Check your sentences with your partner. How many are true? How similar or different are you?

Speaking: anecdote



- 1 1.33 Listen to Eddie talking about the last time he bought somebody a gift. Underline the answers he gives.

- Who was the gift for? My friend / sister.
- What was the occasion? Her birthday / wedding anniversary.
- Where did you go shopping for the gift? To the mall / On the internet.
- Did you know what you were going to buy? Yes, I did / No, I didn't.
- What did you buy in the end? Jewelry / A foot spa.
- How much did you spend? About \$50 / \$15.
- Did you buy a card too? Yes, I did / No, I didn't.
- Did the person like the gift? Yes, she did / No, she didn't.
- Was it the kind of gift you would like to receive? Yes, it was / No, it wasn't.

- 2 You're going to tell your partner about the last time you bought somebody a gift.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about the last time you bought someone a gift.

Grammar & Vocabulary

Verbs patterns 1

Verbs with two objects

buy somebody something
send somebody something
give somebody something

somebody = indirect object

something = direct object

- 1 Look at these two sentences and answer the questions.

Eddie bought a foot spa for **his sister**.

Eddie bought **his sister** a foot spa.

- Do the sentences mean the same thing?
- What color is the direct object in each sentence?
- What color is the indirect object in each sentence?

- 2 Complete the table to show two ways of saying the same thing.

subject + verb + thing + to/for + person	subject + verb + person + thing
a) I never lend my car to anybody .	I never lend anybody my car.
b) My friends send lots of texts to me .	_____
c) I sometimes buy flowers for my mom .	_____

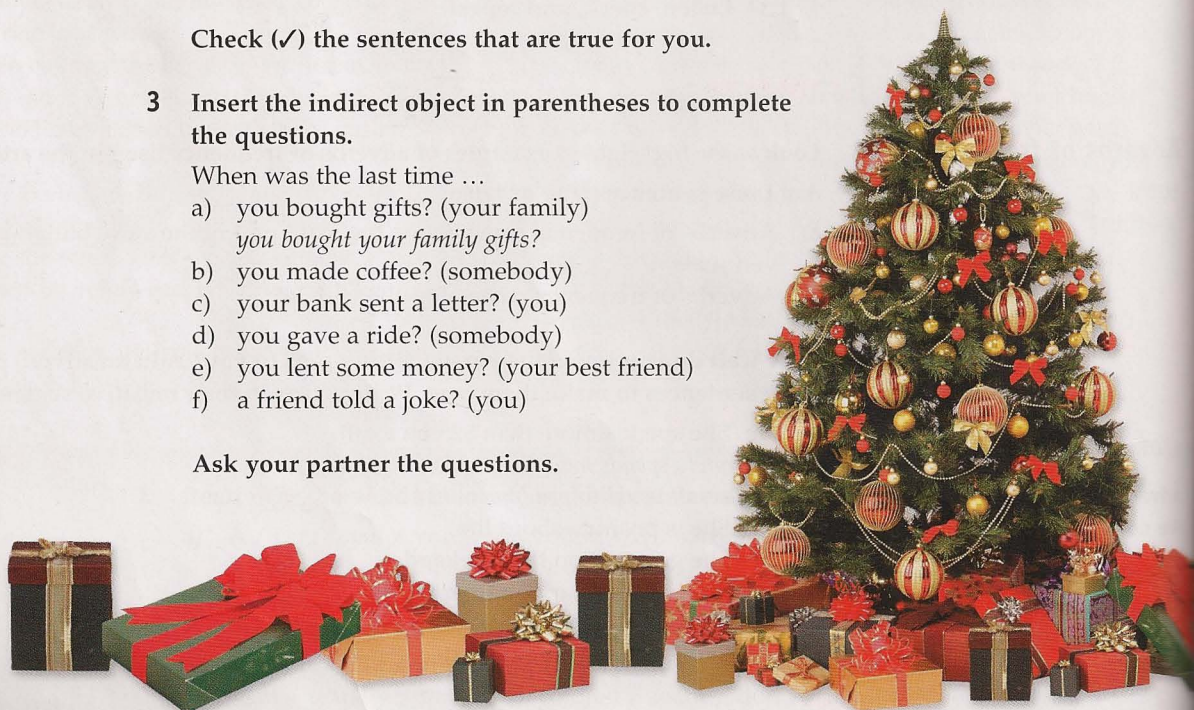
Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

- 3 Insert the indirect object in parentheses to complete the questions.

When was the last time ...

- you bought gifts? (your family)
you bought your family gifts?
- you made coffee? (somebody)
- your bank sent a letter? (you)
- you gave a ride? (somebody)
- you lent some money? (your best friend)
- a friend told a joke? (you)

Ask your partner the questions.



- 4 **Grammar Extra 4, Part 1** page 132. Read the explanation and do the exercises.



Speaking

1 Complete these statements with *Men* or *Women* as you think appropriate.

- _____ can't stand shopping for clothes.
- _____ don't mind spending hours and hours shopping for clothes.
- _____ spend a lot of time going from store to store, comparing prices and quality.
- _____ never forget to look at the price tag before they buy.
- _____ only agree to go shopping when they really need to buy something.
- _____ like going to the dentist more than going shopping.

2 Discuss your ideas with a partner. Which statements in Exercise 1 are true for you?

Grammar & Vocabulary

Verb patterns 2

Verbs + *ing*-form

avoid can't stand
don't mind enjoy hate
like love spend time

I can't stand **shopping**.

Verbs + *to*-infinitive

agree can't afford
choose decide forget
manage need refuse
want would like

I can't afford **to buy** it.

1 Complete these interviews with two men about shopping. Use the *ing*-form or the *to*-infinitive.



Questions	Conor, 26, writer	Jim, 32, designer
Question 1 Do you mind (1 go) <i>going</i> to the shopping mall?	Not really. But after about an hour, I want (2 go) _____ home.	Actually, I can't stand (3 go) _____ to the mall. My girlfriend knows this, so she usually chooses (4 go) _____ without me.
Question 2 What kind of stores do you enjoy (5 go) _____ into?	Bookstores. I spend a lot of time (6 read) _____ book reviews so I always have a list of books I'd like (7 buy) _____.	I enjoy (8 look) _____ at electronic equipment but I can't afford (9 buy) _____ it. It's usually way too expensive.
Question 3 Are there any kinds of stores you hate (10 go) _____ into?	I hate grocery stores. I usually forget (11 buy) _____ the things I went there for, so I avoid (12 go) _____ into them. Fortunately, I can do most of my food shopping online.	I refuse (13 go) _____ into shoe stores with my girlfriend. She tries on ten pairs and then decides (14 buy) _____ the first pair.
Question 4 Do you enjoy (15 buy) _____ clothes for yourself?	Not really. I only go into a clothing store when I need (16 buy) _____ a new shirt or something. For me, shopping is a necessity, not a pleasure.	I love (17 have) _____ new clothes, but I never manage (18 find) _____ time to go shopping.

1.34 Listen and check your answers. Do you know any men with similar attitudes?

Ask your partner the questions (1–4) from the interview.

2 Complete the following sentences with your own ideas.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| a) I enjoy ... | c) I can't stand ... | e) I'd like ... | g) I can't afford ... |
| b) I don't mind ... | d) I avoid ... | f) I need ... | h) I've decided ... |

Compare your sentences with your partner.

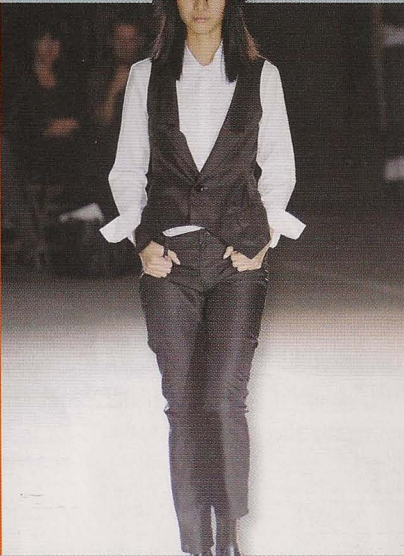
Reading & Vocabulary

- 1 Look at the pictures from a fashion magazine and complete the descriptions with the words in the box.

boots earrings necklace pants sandals scarf
shirt skirt top ~~vest~~

MEN'S OR WOMEN'S FASHION?

KEIKO is wearing a black silk (1) *vest*, a white cotton (2) _____, black woolen (3) _____, and black leather (4) _____.





ROBERT is wearing a plain green linen (5) _____, a red cotton (6) _____, a light green silk (7) _____ around his head, gold (8) _____, a gold (9) _____, and yellow leather (10) _____.

1.35 Listen and check.

- 2 What do you think of the clothes in the pictures? Tell a partner.
- 3 Complete the table with words from the descriptions in Exercise 1 above.

Design/Color	Material	Clothes and accessories
<i>black</i>	<i>silk</i>	<i>vest</i>

- 4 1.36 Listen and repeat the items of clothing (a-d).



Add the words to the table in Exercise 3.

- 5 Complete the sentences below in as much detail as possible so that they are true for you. Compare your sentences with a partner.

a) I never wear ... b) I often wear ... c) Today, I'm wearing ...

I never wear checked shirts. Today I'm wearing a blue cotton top.

Reading

- 1 Read the article. According to environmental groups, are cheap clothes good or bad?



The real price of fashion

In 2005, a military jacket appeared on the fashion pages of *Vogue*. There's nothing unusual about that, except that the price tag was not \$2,400, nor even \$240. The jacket was made by Primark, and it was on sale for just \$24! Women went crazy for it, and Primark was renamed "the new Prada."

At Primark, T-shirts cost \$4, pajamas cost \$10, suits cost \$30, and women's tops cost less than \$10. So it's no surprise that Primark's profits are increasing and new stores are opening everywhere.

So everybody's happy, then. Well, no. According to environmental groups such as Friends of the Earth,

cheap clothes are damaging the environment. Consumers are paying low prices for their clothes, but the planet is paying a high cost.

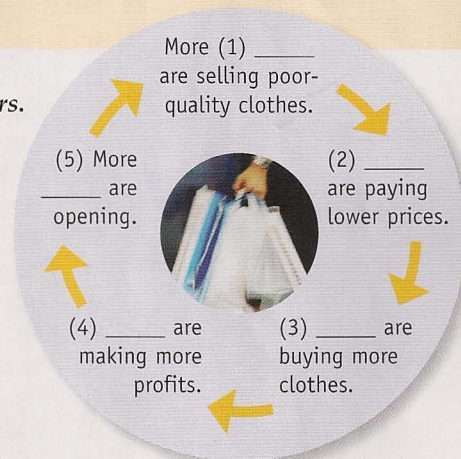
The result of low prices is that people are buying more. On average, people now buy fifty items of clothing a year – an increase of 33%. But these clothes are poor quality and they don't last. You can't sell them second-hand or recycle them for charity. They are disposable.

A spokesperson from the Green Party said, "We are not against fashion, but cheap clothes, not designed to last, are bad for the consumer and the planet."

- 2 Complete the diagram with *stores or consumers*.

- 3 Is this trend happening in your country? Discuss these questions with your partner.

- Where can you buy cheap clothes in your town or city?
- How much do you pay for casual clothes such as jeans, sneakers, sweatshirts, etc.?
- Do you recycle your clothes? How?



Grammar

Present tenses

Simple present

I **work** in an office.

We **start** work at nine.

Present progressive

I'm **not working** now.

I'm **having** lunch.

My job **is getting** more difficult to do.

- 1 Match the underlined verb forms (1–3) in these sentences with their uses (a–c).

Today (1) I'm wearing a sweatshirt from Primark. (2) I usually wear designer clothes, but these days (3) I'm buying more clothes from cheap stores because they look great.

- Actions that happen **all the time, often, sometimes, never, etc.** (Simple present)
- Actions that are **in progress at the moment of speaking.** (Present progressive)
- Actions that are **in progress around the moment of speaking.** (Present progressive)

- 2 Write these sentences in the negative and match them with the uses (a–c) in Exercise 1.

- | | |
|---|---|
| a) I'm sitting near the door. | e) I'm studying for an exam. |
| <i>I'm not sitting near the door. = Use 'b'</i> | f) It's raining. |
| b) My parents go to church. | g) I'm learning to play the piano. |
| c) I'm saving money for my next vacation. | h) The cost of living is going up fast. |
| d) My mother works in a bookstore. | |

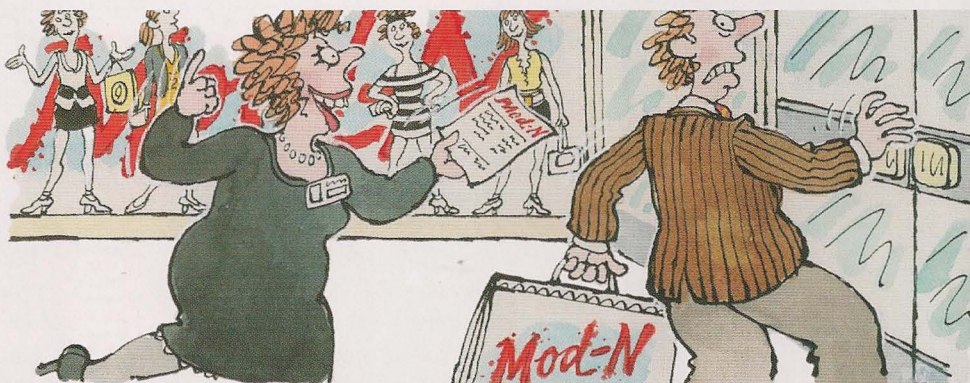
Check (✓) the sentences – affirmative or negative – that are true. Compare with a partner.

- 3 **Pairwork** Student A: page 117 Student B: page 122

- 4 **Grammar Extra 4, Part 2** page 132. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Useful phrases

- 1 Russell wants to buy a gift for his girlfriend. Read the useful phrases. Put R if you think Russell says them. Put SC if you think the sales clerk says them.



- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| a) I'm just looking, thanks. R | f) Can she exchange it if it doesn't fit? |
| b) I'll take it. | g) What size is she? |
| c) Can I help you? | h) Here's your receipt. |
| d) What colors do you have? | i) What sort of thing are you looking for? |
| e) How would you like to pay? | j) By credit card |

1.37 Listen, check, and repeat the useful phrases.

- 2 Put the useful phrases in the correct place in the conversation.

- SC: (1) *Can I help you?*
 R: (2) _____ Well, actually, I'm looking for something for my girlfriend.
 SC: (3) _____
 R: I don't really know. A sweater?
 SC: OK, and what color would you like?
 R: (4) _____
 SC: We have any color you want, sir. Purple is very fashionable right now.
 R: Purple's fine.
 SC: OK. (5) _____
 R: Ah, well, she isn't very big, but she's not particularly small.
 SC: So she's medium.
 R: Yes, medium.
 SC: Well, we have this nice purple sweater here ...
 R: Good. (6) _____
 SC: Are you sure you don't want to see any more ...?
 R: No, that's great. I'll take it. Thank you. How much is it?
 SC: That's \$70, sir. (7) _____
 R: Seventy?! (8) _____, please.
 SC: Fine. If you could just sign ...
 R: Here you go. Goodbye.
 SC: Just a minute, sir. (9) _____
 R: Oh, yes, er ... (10) _____
 SC: Yes, but she needs to keep the receipt.

1.38 Listen and check your answers.

Practice the conversation with a partner.

- 3 Work with your partner. Write your own shopping conversation.

- Decide on the store and what the customer is buying.
- Decide on the character/personality of the sales clerk and the customer.
- Include at least six of these eight words.

by fit help just pay receipt size sort

- Practice your conversation and perform it for the rest of the class.

Vocabulary Extra

Clothes and accessories

1 Match the pictures with the descriptions. Then complete the descriptions.

- ☐ 7 a checked scarf
- ☐ a brown leather _____
- ☐ a plain white cotton _____
- ☐ a blue denim _____
- ☐ a pinstriped _____
- ☐ a silver _____
- ☐ a patterned woolen _____
- ☐ a floral _____
- ☐ gold _____
- ☐ striped _____
- ☐ plastic _____
- ☐ a light blue silk _____

2 Work with a partner.
Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions.

What's this?

It's a checked scarf.

What are these?

They're brown leather gloves.



Focus on verbs used with clothes

1 Match the verb phrases with their meanings

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| a) get dressed | 1 take your clothes off |
| b) get undressed | 2 put something on to see if it fits/looks good on you |
| c) get changed | 3 clothes are the right size for you |
| d) clothes fit you | 4 put your clothes on |
| e) clothes look good on you | 5 clothes are the right color, shape, and style for you |
| f) try something on | 6 take your clothes off and put different clothes on |

2 Underline the most appropriate verb phrase.

- a) I always get dressed / get undressed before breakfast.
- b) I usually try on / wear formal clothes at work.
- c) When it's cold, I put on / take off my leather coat.
- d) I like trying on / taking off new clothes.
- e) Yellow and orange don't look good on / fit me.
- f) I get dressed / get changed when I get home from work.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Compare with your partner.

In Shape

Grammar Comparatives and superlatives. Phrasal verbs

Vocabulary How + adjective/adverb. Sports. Numbers

Useful phrases Giving instructions

Reading

1 Read and answer the questionnaire.

ARE YOU

dangerously out of shape?

1 In an average day, do you ...

- a) climb more than a hundred stairs?
YES / NO
- b) do at least one hour of housework?
YES / NO
- c) walk or cycle to school or work?
YES / NO

2 How often do you walk five kilometers or more?

- a) Once a month.
- b) Once a week.
- c) Never.

3 How much time do you spend playing sports each month?

- a) More than nine hours.
- b) Between two and nine hours.
- c) Less than two hours.

4 How often do you spend twenty minutes or more doing an activity that makes you hot or sweaty?

- a) Three or more times a week.
- b) Once or twice a week.
- c) Not at all.

5 How long does it take you to walk a kilometer?

- a) Less than ten minutes.
- b) Between ten and twenty minutes.
- c) I can't walk that far.

6 How many of the following activities do you do at least once a week?

- a) Go jogging. YES / NO
- b) Play a ball game. YES / NO
- c) Do some aerobic exercise (cycling, rowing, etc.). YES / NO

7 Check (✓) the activities you often do when you're on vacation.

- a) Go hiking.
- b) Go swimming.
- c) Go sightseeing.
- d) Go dancing.
- e) Lie on the beach.
- f) Eat and drink a lot.

8 Do you smoke? YES / NO

How to score

- 1 a) YES: 5 NO: 0
b) YES: 5 NO: 0
c) YES: 5 NO: 0
- 2 a) 3 b) 5 c) 0
- 3 a) 5 b) 3 c) 0
- 4 a) 5 b) 3 c) 0
- 5 a) 5 b) 3 c) 0
- 6 a) YES: 5 NO: 0
b) YES: 5 NO: 0
c) YES: 5 NO: 0
- 7 a) 5 b) 5 c) 3 d) 3 e) 0 f) 0
- 8 YES: 0 NO: 10

What your score means

20 or less: Your health and your life are in danger! You must do more exercise.

21-30: Could be worse, but not much worse.

31-40: Not bad, but could be better.

41-50: You are healthier than the average person and you probably find your life more enjoyable as a result.

51 or more: You are in great shape. Are you a professional athlete? (Are you telling the truth?!)

2 Calculate your score and compare your answers with a partner.

Vocabulary



1 Look at the table. How long does it take you to do each activity?

	Activity
How long does it take you to ...	(1) get up in the morning? (2) buy gifts for people you love? (3) choose from a menu in a restaurant? (4) decide whether you like someone? (5) read a novel? (6) get ready to go out for the evening? (7) get to sleep at night?

Guess the time it takes your partner to do the same things.

Ask your partner questions to check your ideas.

How long does it take you to get up in the morning?

About twenty minutes.

2 Complete more questions with *How* + adjective/adverb. Use the words in the box.

far fast long many much ~~often~~ old well

- How *often* do you travel by train?
- How ____ does it take you to get to work or school?
- How ____ cousins do you have?
- How ____ cash do you have with you right now?
- How ____ is it from your house to the nearest beach?
- How ____ does your car go?
- How ____ is the oldest living person in your family?
- How ____ do you know your neighbors?

Ask your partner the questions.

Speaking: anecdote

1 2.02 Listen to Tina talking about her experiences of doing sports at school. Are the answers here right (✓) or wrong (X)?



- How many hours of sports did you do each week at school?
Three hours a week. X
- What different sports did you do during the school year?
Swimming, tennis, and lacrosse.
- Which sports did you like/hate the most?
I hated lacrosse.
- What kind of sports facilities did your school have?
A gym and a basketball court.
- What did your gym teacher look like?
She looked like a boxer.
- Did you ever play for a school team?
Yes, I played for the school lacrosse team.
- What was your best/worst sports moment?
My best moment was winning a disco dancing competition.

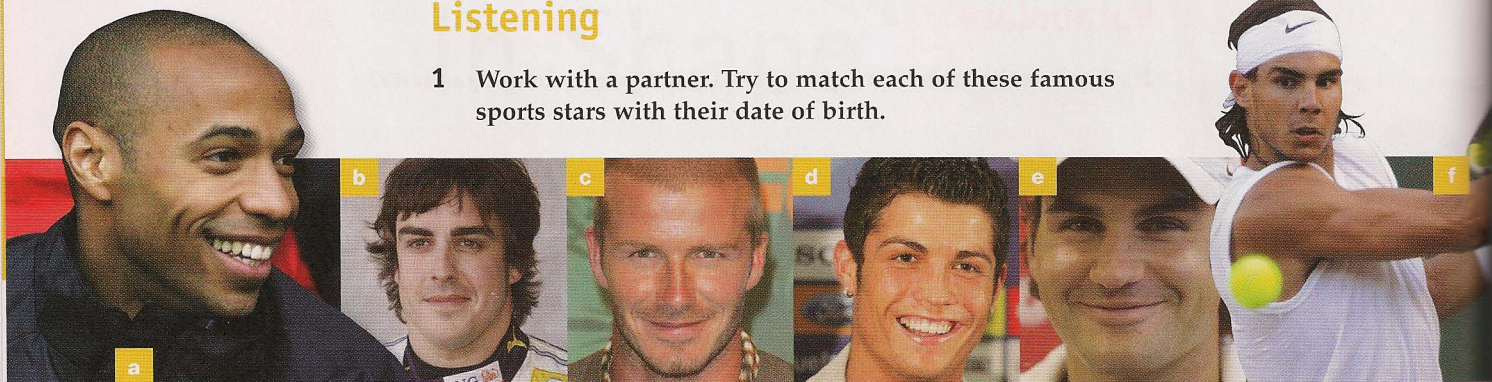


2 You're going to tell your partner about your experiences of doing sports at school.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about your experiences of doing sports at school.

Listening

- 1 Work with a partner. Try to match each of these famous sports stars with their date of birth.



▲ Thierry Henry ▲ Fernando Alonso ▲ David Beckham ▲ Cristiano Ronaldo ▲ Roger Federer ▲ Rafael Nadal

Date of birth c 05/02/75 08/17/77 07/29/81 08/08/81 02/05/85 06/03/86



- 2.03 Listen and check your answers

- 2 2.04 Listen to a discussion between a marketing director and an advertising executive. Which sports star do they choose to advertise a new energy drink?

Listen again and complete these sentences. You need to use some names more than once.

- a) Beckham is more famous than Henry. d) _____ isn't as successful as _____.
b) _____ isn't as interesting as _____. e) _____ is much younger than _____.
c) _____ is a bit older than _____. f) _____ is the best-looking, most ...

- 3 Work with a partner. List the most famous sports stars in your country.

- Complete the sentences in Exercise 2 with names from your list.
- Choose one sports star from your list to advertise a new sports car.
- Compare your ideas with other students in the class.

Grammar

Comparatives

He's a little bit older
He's older than her.
He's much older
She's not as old as him.

- 1 Test your general knowledge! Use the adjective in parentheses with a little bit / much / not as ... as to make true comparisons.

- a) Mount Aconcagua in the Andes (high) _____ Mount McKinley in Alaska.
Mount Aconcagua is much higher than Mount McKinley.
b) London (wet) _____ Rome.
c) The US Army (small) _____ the North Korean Army.
d) Heathrow Airport in London (busy) _____ Los Angeles International Airport.
e) Hawaii (big) _____ Cuba.
f) Big Ben (tall) _____ the Statue of Liberty.

- 2.05 Listen and check your answers.

- 2 Combine the noun phrases with the adjectives – or your own ideas – to make comparative statements that you agree with.

Chilean wine flying
German cars living in a city
men Mexican food
shopping online women

cheap complex convenient
exciting expensive funny
interesting noisy reliable
safe sensitive sophisticated

Compare your statements with a partner. Do you agree or disagree?

I think women are much more complex than men.

- 3 Grammar Extra 5, Part 1 page 134. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Pronunciation

1 Complete the following expressions with the appropriate word.

- a) It's **as** light **as** a feather. c) They're **as** good **as** _____. e) It's **as** solid **as** a _____.
b) He's **as** free **as** a _____. d) She's **as** pretty **as** a _____. f) It's **as** old **as** the _____.

2 2.06 Listen, check, and repeat. Practice the red schwa (/ə/) sounds.

Can you think of people or things you could describe in this way? Do you have similar expressions in your language?

Grammar

1 Write out the superlative forms for the following groups of adjectives.

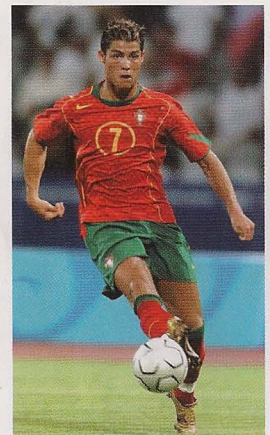
Adjectives	Superlative forms
a) old / rich / exciting / great b) valuable / big / hot / thin c) funny / interesting / sexy / happy d) bad / far / good / talented	<i>the oldest / the richest / the ...</i>

In each group, underline the superlative adjective which is formed in a different way from the other three.

2 Complete the questions with different superlative adjectives. Use the adjectives in Exercise 1 or your own ideas.

- a) Who is _____ sports person in the world?
b) What is _____ music group of all time?
c) What is _____ place you've ever visited?
d) Who is _____ person you know?
e) What is _____ possession you have?
f) Who is _____ actor in your country?
g) Where is _____ nightlife in town?
h) Who is _____ person in the class?

Ask a partner your questions.



Vocabulary

1 2.07 Listen and repeat the numbers in the box.

$\frac{3}{4}$ 0.25 0.33 $1\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ 1.5 0.125 $\frac{1}{3}$ 0.75

Make pairs of numbers with the same value. Practice saying the numbers.

$\frac{3}{4}$ is the same as 0.75.

2 2.08 Listen and repeat the numbers in column A. Write each number in full.

- | | |
|--|---|
| A | B |
| a) 249 km/h <i>two hundred and forty-nine kilometers an hour</i> | 1 Cristiano Ronaldo's earnings in 2007 |
| b) 42.195 km | 2 The percentage of the population who trust the government |
| c) 8.2% | 3 The biggest soccer score |
| d) \$6,188,000 | 4 The fastest tennis serve |
| e) 32-0 | 5 The official distance for a marathon |

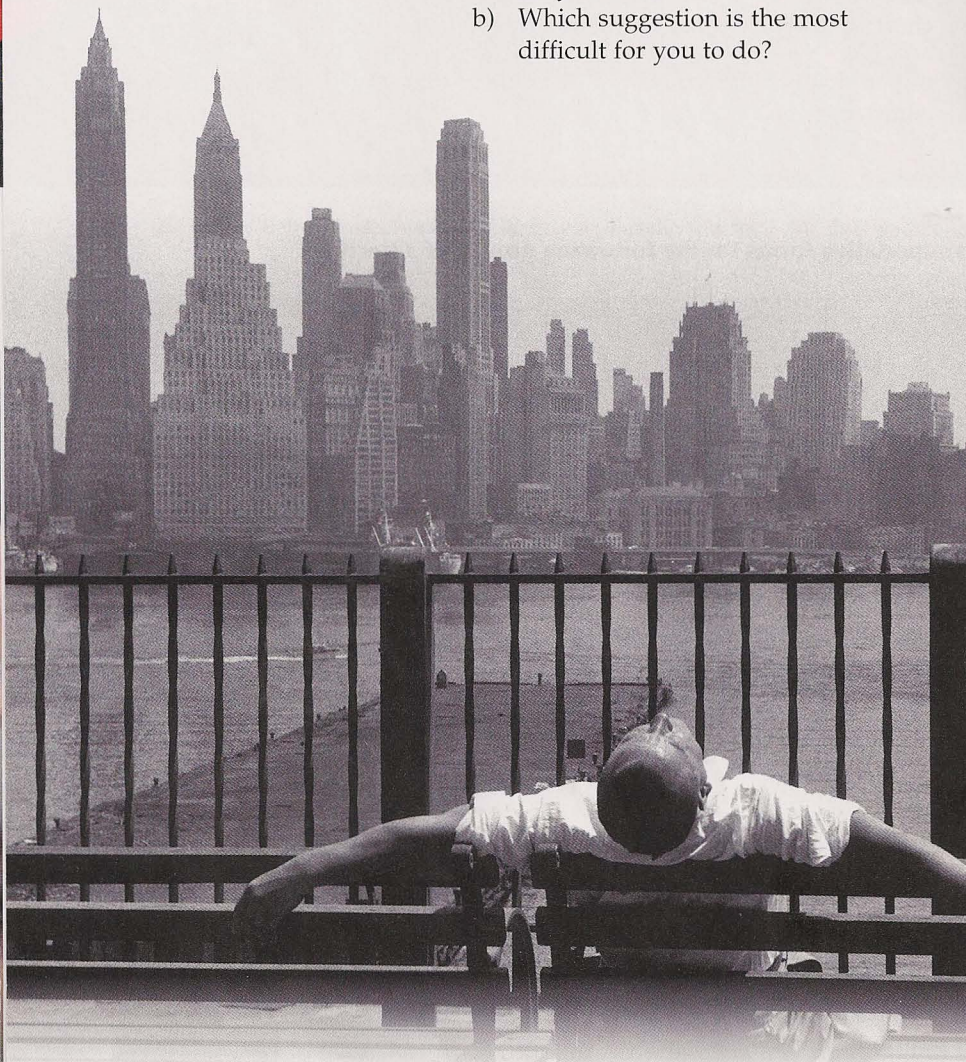
Match the numbers in column A with the facts in column B.

3 Pairwork Student A: page 117 Student B: page 122

Reading

- 1 Imagine that today is "No-Stress Day." Read the list and answer the questions.

- Which suggestion is the easiest for you to do?
- Which suggestion is the most difficult for you to do?



Discuss your answers with a partner.

- 2 Work with your partner. Add three of your own suggestions to the list.

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the sentences using the phrasal verbs in the box.

give up hang up put on ~~take off~~ throw away turn off turn on

- I always *take off* my shoes before I go into my house.
- If I want to relax, I _____ all the lights and sit in silence.
- When I want to look my best, I _____ a suit.
- I could never _____ coffee – it's the only thing that keeps me awake.
- The first thing I do when I get to the office is _____ my computer.
- I never _____ plastic bags because they're so useful.
- I never do any ironing. I just _____ my clothes very carefully when they are wet.

- 2 Are any of the sentences true for you? Discuss with your partner.

16 ways to de-stress

- Take off your watch.
- Switch off your cell phone.
- Don't eat your breakfast on your feet – sit down and enjoy it.
- Put on your most comfortable clothes.
- Don't run after the bus – let it go.
- Smell the roses.
- Give up the gym.
- Fall in love.
- Only turn on your TV if there's something you really want to watch.
- Throw away or give away any clothes you haven't worn for the past two years.
- Laugh out loud.
- Hang up your clothes when you take them off.
- Spend ten minutes doing absolutely nothing.
- Walk.
- Only do the ironing if you love it.
- Put on your favorite music and turn up the volume.

Grammar

Phrasal verbs

Intransitive

She sat down.

Transitive (separable)

He took off his shoes.

He took his shoes off.

He took them off.

Transitive (not separable)

They ran after the bus.

They ran after it.

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the three phrasal verbs used in these sentences (*take off*, *run after*, and *sit down*) and answer the questions.

subject	verb	object	particle	subject	verb	particle	object
I	took	my shoes	off	I	ran	after	the bus.
But it didn't stop.							
subject	verb	particle					
So	I	sat	down	and cried. I hate bus drivers.			

- Which phrasal verb does not take an object? (INTRANSITIVE)
 - Which phrasal verb can have the object between the verb and the particle? (TRANSITIVE – SEPARABLE)
 - Which phrasal verb always has the object after the particle? (TRANSITIVE – NOT SEPARABLE)
- 2 When the object is a pronoun such as *it*, *them*, *her*, where do you always put it when the phrasal verb is: a) separable? b) inseparable?
- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make answers to the questions. Look the phrasal verbs up in a dictionary if you are not sure.
- What should I do with this banana skin? (away / throw / it) *Throw it away.*
 - What should I do with this mess? (it / up / clear)
 - What should I do with my pants? (hang / up / them)
 - What should I do about this problem? (it / deal / with)
 - What should I do with this application form? (fill / in / it)
 - What should I do about my party? Nobody can come. (it / call / off)
- 4 **Grammar Extra 5, Part 2** page 134. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Listening & Speaking

- 1 You are going to listen to a radio show about laughter clubs. Do you think the statements (a–e) are true or false?

- Young children laugh much more than adults.
- Laughter clubs started in the USA.
- Laughter releases happy chemicals called endorphins.
- Laughing is good for the heart.
- In laughter clubs, people laugh at funny stories.

2.09 Listen and check your answers.

- 2 Face your partner. Take turns trying to make each other laugh.

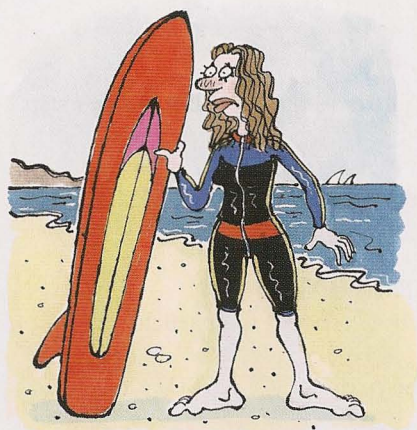
- 3 Work with your partner. Discuss the following questions.

- What kind of thing makes you laugh?
- How do you feel after a good laugh?
- When was the last time you laughed so much you couldn't stop?



Useful phrases

1 2.10 Listen to the three conversations (a-c). Which sports are these people learning?



a) Selma's learning to _____. b) Jimmy's learning to play _____. c) Rebecca's learning to play _____.

2 Match each person in Exercise 1 with a set of instructions 1, 2, or 3.

1
Throw the ball in the air.
Don't look at me.
Look at the ball.
Pick up your racket.
Try again.

3
Kick the ball.
Don't throw the ball.
Don't pick it up.
Don't touch the ball with your hand.
Use your foot.

2
Stand up on the board.
Hold on.
Don't let go.
Be careful.
Don't go too fast.

3 Complete the first conversation in Exercise 1 by replacing the highlighted phrases (1-6) with the useful phrases in the box.

Be careful! Be patient. Come back! ~~Don't be mean.~~
Don't worry. Try again.

Paul: OK, are you ready?

Selma: Yes.

Paul: Stand up on the board.

Selma: OK. Ohhhh!

Paul: Ha, ha, ha!

Selma: (1) **Be nice.** *Don't be mean.*

Paul: Oh, sorry. OK. (2) **Don't give up.** Good! Great. Hold on. Don't let go.

Selma: Ohhhh! It's too difficult. I can't do it.

Paul: Don't be silly. Of course you can do it. (3) **Don't be impatient.** Come on, try again.

Selma: I look stupid.

Paul: (4) **Relax.** Everyone looks stupid the first time. Now, stand up on the board.

That's it. (5) **Take care!** Good. Now, don't go too fast, Selma. Selma!

(6) **Don't go too far!**

Selma: Wheeee!

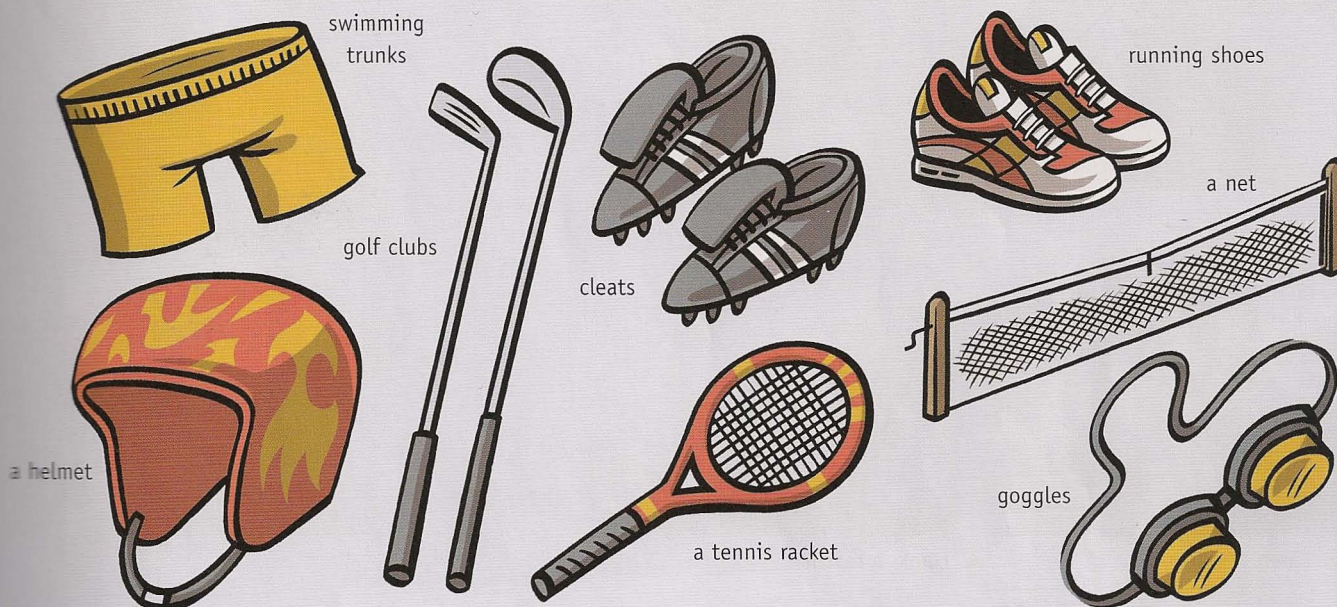
Listen to the conversation again and check. Practice the conversation with a partner.

Vocabulary Extra

Sports

1 Complete the table. Use the pictures of equipment to help you.

Sport	Person	Place	Equipment
track	a runner	an athletics track	shorts, a running top, (1) <i>running shoes</i>
skiing	a skier	a ski resort	skis, ski boots, ski poles, (2) _____
soccer	a soccer player	a soccer field	a soccer ball, shorts, a soccer shirt, (3) _____
golf	a golfer	a golf course	golf balls, (4) _____
swimming	a swimmer	a swimming pool	a swimsuit, (5) _____, (6) _____
tennis	a tennis player	a tennis court	tennis balls, (7) _____, (8) _____



2 Add more words or sports to the table in Exercise 1. Use your dictionary.

Focus on verbs used with sports

1 Underline the most appropriate alternative in each of these sentences.

- I do / play / practice some exercise two or three times a week. It keeps me in shape.
- I've never been / played / practiced windsurfing. I can't swim.
- I'd like to play / go / practice snowboarding. I love the mountains.
- The last time I did / went / practiced some sports was on vacation.
- I did / played / practiced a lot of baseball when I was a child. Now I just watch it on TV.
- I'm not very good at tennis because I don't have time to do / go / practice.

How many of the sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

2 Complete the verb phrases with *do*, *go*, or *play*. Use your dictionary and add more sports to each list.

a) _____ cycling fishing swimming windsurfing _____	b) _____ athletics judo _____	c) _____ basketball golf tennis volleyball _____
---	-------------------------------------	--

6

Job

Grammar Permission and obligation (*can / have to*). Present perfect and simple past

Vocabulary Jobs. Collocations (*work*). *should*. Office equipment

Useful phrases Presenting yourself

Listening

- 1 2.11 Listen to four people giving answers to the same question. What was the question?



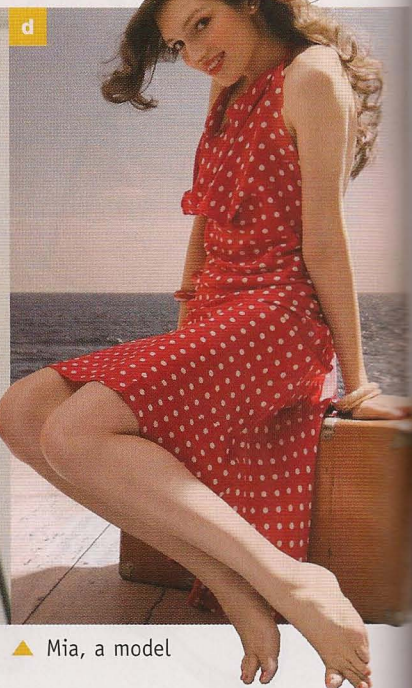
▲ Mark, a CEO



▲ Karen, a surgeon



▲ Frank, a teacher



▲ Mia, a model

- 2 Listen again and check (✓) the jobs that each person mentions.

Mark: a soldier ☒ an engineer ☐ a DJ ☐ a CEO ☐

Karen: a surgeon ☐ a ballet dancer ☐ a doctor ☐ a tour guide ☐ a butcher ☐

Frank: a farmer ☐ a vet ☐ a pilot ☐ a snowboarder ☐ a teacher ☐

Mia: an archaeologist ☐ an au pair ☐ a model ☐ a telemarketer ☐

What did you want to be when you were a child?

Speaking

- 1 Work as a class. Write the names of all the jobs that you, your parents, and your grandparents have had.
- 2 Work in small groups. Look at all the jobs you wrote down in Exercise 1 and discuss these questions.
 - a) In which job can you earn the most money?
 - b) In which job do you get the most vacation days?
 - c) Which job do you study the longest for?
 - d) In which job do you need the most training?
 - e) Which job is the most stressful?
 - f) Which job is the most useful to society?

Reading

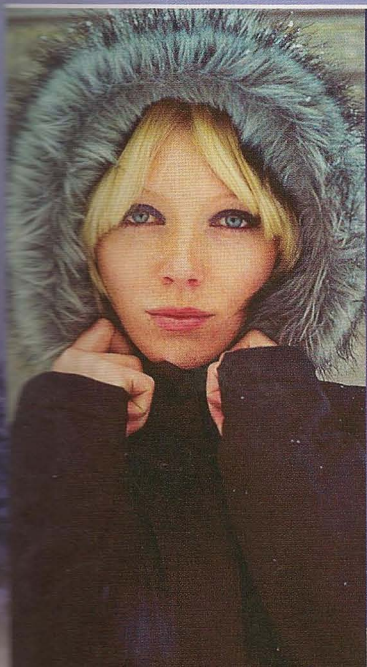
- 1 You are going to read about the model and snowboarder, Charlotte Dutton. Look at these words and phrases. Do you associate them with modeling or snowboarding?

crash helmet designer clothes freezing muscles Paris slim strong
warm, baggy clothes

Read the article and check your ideas.

Charlotte Dutton

FROM MOUNTAINS TO MODELING



CHARLOTTE DUTTON has two jobs. Half the year she's a top model in Europe, and the other half she's a professional snowboarder in Canada.

"I love modeling and snowboarding," she says, "but I have to be two different people! You need muscles to be a snowboarder, but you have to be slim to be a model.

- 5 When I'm modeling, I can't eat anything fattening. But in the mountains it's freezing, so you have to eat protein, cake, and chocolate. For the jumps and turns, you have to be strong. Snowboarding is sometimes dangerous, and I often fall. But I have to be careful because I can't break my leg and then go to Paris to model the best skirts. It's funny – half the year I have to wear warm, baggy clothes and a crash
10 helmet. Then I go to Europe for a season, and I have to wear beautiful designer clothes."

- Does she want to be a top international model or an Olympic snowboarder? The answer is she wants to be both ... but when she's much
15 older, she dreams of living in a bakery and eating cake all day!



- 2 Imagine you could do two jobs. Which jobs would you like? Tell a partner.

Grammar

can/can't

have to/don't have to

can = It's permitted.

can't = It isn't permitted.

You **can** get married at 18

but you **can't** buy alcohol until you are 21.

have to = It's necessary.

don't have to = It isn't necessary.

You **have to** wear a helmet on a motorcycle but you **don't have to** wear one on a bicycle.

- 1 Match the beginnings and ends of these sentences so that they make sense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| a) A snowboarder | 1 can get up late. |
| b) A club DJ | 2 has to have very clean hands. |
| c) A flight attendant | 3 has to wear a crash helmet. |
| d) A tour guide | 4 can't eat fattening food. |
| e) A model | 5 has to know a lot of history. |
| f) A cook | 6 doesn't have to pay for flights. |

- 2 Match the underlined part of each sentence (a–d) with the correct meaning (1–4).

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| a) <u>I can</u> arrive at any time. | 1 It's necessary for me to ... |
| b) <u>I can't</u> wear jeans. | 2 It isn't OK for me to ... |
| c) <u>I have to</u> use a computer. | 3 It isn't necessary for me to ... |
| d) <u>I don't have to</u> wear a uniform. | 4 It's OK for me to ... |

Think about your work or school. Which sentences are true for you?

- 3 **Grammar Extra 6, Part 1** page 136. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Reading

1 Work with a partner. Discuss the bad experiences you could have in these jobs.

an actor an au pair a factory worker a vet a waiter/waitress

2.12 Read the article. Compare your ideas with the stories Meredith and Leo tell. Were any of your ideas similar?

Nightmare jobs

Meredith: a vet

What's the worst thing that has ever happened in your job?

- Probably the dog that
5 bit me. It wasn't a big dog – I don't mind the big ones. The small ones are the worst. It gave me a very nasty bite.



Have you ever had any other jobs?

- 10 Yes, I had various jobs when I was a student. One summer I was a fruit-picker in California.

What's the worst job you've ever had?

- I worked as an au pair for a rich family in New York. I never had a day off and I had to
15 do everything – cooking, cleaning, shopping – and take care of their horrible children. I left after two weeks and managed to get a job as a waitress in an Italian restaurant.

Leo: an actor

What's the worst thing that's ever happened in your job?

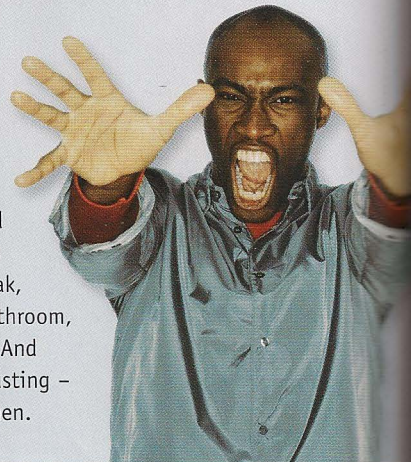
- 20 So many bad things have happened – but I think my worst moment was when I read my first bad review in the newspaper. They wrote terrible things about me, and I was so upset. Now I don't read my reviews any more.

Have you ever had any other jobs?

- 25 Oh, yes, it's hard to make a living as an actor. So I've had lots of part-time jobs over the years. For example, I've worked in a store, sold ice cream on the beach, and handed out publicity flyers in the street.

What's the worst job you've ever had?

- The worst job I've ever had was at an egg-packing factory. Working conditions are terrible – you stand for hours at the end
35 of a conveyor belt, putting eggs into boxes. You can't take a break, and if you want to go to the bathroom, you have to ask for permission. And worst of all, the smell was disgusting –
40 I've never eaten an egg since then.



2 Answer the questions from memory. Read again and check your answers.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| a) Who's had lots of part-time jobs? | d) Who's sold ice cream on the beach? |
| b) Who's been a fruit-picker? | e) Who's worked in a factory? |
| c) Who's taken care of horrible children? | f) Who's worked as a waitress? |

3 Ask questions and try to find somebody who has had the experiences above.

Vocabulary

1 Add another collocation to each of the sets below using words and phrases from the article above.

- a) to have **some time** / **two weeks** / **a day** off (line 14)
b) to **find** / **lose** / a job (line 17)
c) to make a **decision** / **money** / (line 25)
d) a **well-paid** / **full-time** / job (line 26)
e) to take a **nap** / **rest** / (line 36)
f) to ask for **advice** / **a pay-raise** / (line 38)

2 Use any collocations from Exercise 1 to write six sentences about yourself.

*The last time I had some time off was at Thanksgiving.
I'd like to find a better job.*

Grammar

Present perfect

I've
You've worked
He/She/It's seen
We've been
They've

I've = I have
He's = He has

Have you ever worked
in a bar?
Yes, I have.
No, I haven't.
(ever = at any time
"up to now")



1 Look at these two sentences from the article on page 50 and answer the questions below.

- 1 Yes, I had various jobs when I was a student.
 - 2 So I've had lots of part-time jobs over the years.
- a) Which sentence refers to a completed action in "finished" time? What tense is used?
 - b) Which sentence refers to a completed action in time "up to now"? What tense is used?

2 Complete the table with the time expressions in the box.

~~a few minutes ago~~ in 2005 ~~in the last two weeks~~ last week never
over the years recently this week today when I was a student years ago

"Finished" time	Time "up to now"
<i>a few minutes ago</i>	<i>in the last two weeks</i>

3 Complete the sentences with time expressions from Exercise 2, or some of your own. Write true sentences using the appropriate tense for the verb in parentheses.

- a) I (buy) _____ a great CD ... *I bought a great CD last week.*
- b) I (not go) _____ to the beach ...
- c) I (meet) _____ some interesting people ...
- d) I (spend) _____ a lot of money ...
- e) I (not see) _____ any good movies ...
- f) I (do) _____ a lot of silly things ...
- g) I (read) _____ *The Da Vinci Code* ...
- h) I (lose) _____ my keys ...

4 Pairwork Student A: page 117 Student B: page 122

5 Grammar Extra 6, Part 2 page 136. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Pronunciation

1 Complete the table with the past participles of these irregular verbs. Underline the past participle in each group with a different vowel sound.

Infinitive	Past participle
a) say read feed see	<i>said</i> <i>read</i> <i>fed</i> <u>seen</u>
b) know buy fly grow	
c) ring sing bring hang	
d) drink teach think fight	

2 2.13 Listen, check, and repeat.

Speaking

1 Work with a partner. Make questions from the following prompts.

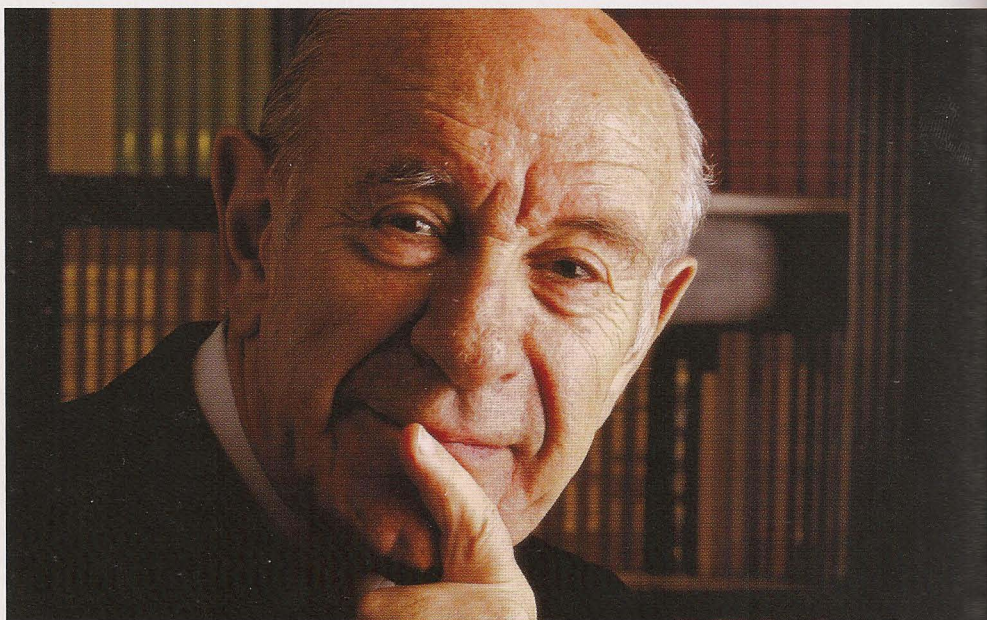
- a) best or worst / party / ever go to
What's the best party you've ever been to?
- b) best or worst / vacation / ever go on
- c) best or worst / meal / ever eat
- d) best or worst / joke / ever hear
- e) best or worst / car / ever go in
- f) best or worst / T-shirt / ever wear
- g) best or worst / bed / ever sleep in

2 Choose three questions from Exercise 1 and ask your partner. Find out as much as you can.

"What's the best vacation you've ever been on?" "When I went to Australia." "When did you go?"

Listening

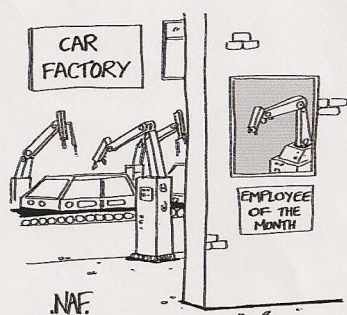
- 1 Look at the picture of Mr. McClusky. You are going to listen to a radio interview with him. Work with a partner and discuss possible answers to these questions.
 - a) What kind of company does Mr. McClusky work for?
 - b) When did he start working for the company?
 - c) How old is he now?



2.14 Listen and check your ideas.

- 2 Listen again and decide if these statements are true or false. Correct the false statements to make them true.
 - a) Mr. McClusky never forces anybody to retire. *True.*
 - b) The oldest employee at McClusky's is 97. *False. He's 87.*
 - c) McClusky's pays a decent salary.
 - d) Employees get five weeks of paid vacation.
 - e) All the staff members are over the retirement age.
 - f) Mr. McClusky's secretary Barbara had to resign because she wanted to get married.
 - g) Mr. McClusky's brother is going to run the business from next year.

Vocabulary



- 1 Use the appropriate underlined words and expressions in Exercise 2 above to complete these statements.
 - a) Everybody should get six weeks of paid vacation a year.
 - b) Nurses, teachers, and police officers don't get _____. They should get more money.
 - c) The official _____ should be the same for men and women.
 - d) If you don't want _____, you should be able to continue working.
 - e) CEOs who _____ large corporations shouldn't earn such large salaries.
 - f) Politicians who tell lies should _____.

- 2 Check (✓) the ending that best describes the meaning of *should* in the statements in Exercise 1.

You use *should* when you think something is ...

a funny idea. ☐

a good idea. ☐

a strange idea. ☐

- 3 Work in small groups. Do you agree or disagree with the statements in Exercise 1?

Writing

- 1 Read this letter of application for a job at McClusky's Department Store. Use the words and expressions in the box to improve the parts of the letter that are **highlighted**.

a new challenge enclosed look forward to hearing reached retirement age
~~Sir or Madam:~~ would like to apply for

McClusky's Department Store
 1016-1020 Massachusetts Ave.
 Washington, DC
 20003

3801 Oak Place
 Bethesda, MD
 20810

March 6, 2008

Dear (1) **McClusky:** *Sir or Madam:*

I saw your advertisement for a position as sales clerk in your homeware department and I (2) **want** the job.

I am an experienced sales clerk and I have worked in many different departments. Please see my résumé, (3) **in the same envelope**, for more details.

I started working in sales when I was twenty-one, forty-five years ago. I left my last job six years ago when I (4) **got too old**, but I get terribly bored at home. I feel I am ready for (5) **new things now**.

I would be available for an interview at any time, even at short notice.

I (6) **can't wait to hear** from you.

Sincerely,

Michele Stern

Michele Stern (Ms.)



- 2 Write your own letter of application for your dream job.

Speaking: anecdote

- 1 2.15 Listen to Kim talking about her friend's job. Underline the answers she gives.

- What's his or her name? Her name's Hannah / Ann.
- What does she do? She's a train driver / personal trainer.
- Who does she work for? She works for a local sports center / She's self-employed.
- What time does she start work? At 7:00 / 8:30 a.m.
- How much does she earn? She gets \$35 / \$25 an hour.
- What does she love about her job? She helps people get in shape / She travels a lot.
- Would you like to have your friend's job? Why? Yes, because she doesn't have to work in an office / No, because she has to get up early.

- 2 You're going to tell your partner about somebody you know who has a good job.

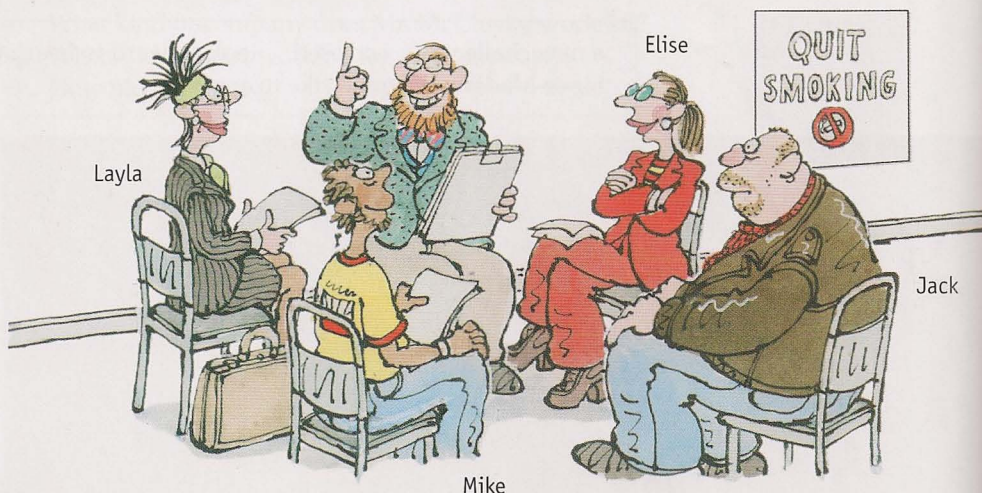
- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about the person's job.



▲ Hannah

Useful phrases

- 1 2.16 Listen to four people presenting themselves to the *Quit Smoking* group. Underline the correct information.



Layla

I work for a big company and we produce sports clothing / audio equipment / bicycles. I'm responsible for sales and promotion / quality control / advertising.

Mike

Right now, I'm working for my father / unemployed / training to be an engineer. I'm looking for a job in publishing / the theater / tourism.

Jack

I work as a bodyguard and I'm based in the south / at head office / in Detroit. My job involves a lot of foreign travel / import and export / sitting at my desk all day.

Elise

I run the photography department / the accounts department / my own company. I'm in charge of a department / marketing / taking pictures.

- 2.17 Listen, check, and repeat the useful phrases.

- 2 Three people arrive late for the group. Read the notes and use words from Exercise 1 to complete their presentations.



- Sarah
- Receptionist, Cutters Salon
- Responsible for appointments and accounts

Hi, I'm Sarah. I work (1) *as* a receptionist (2) _____ Cutters Salon. I'm in (3) _____ of appointments and accounts.



- Charles
- Tour guide, City Tours
- Takes tourists around Boston
- Wants to be hotel manager

I'm Charles. I'm a tour guide and I work (4) _____ City Tours. My job (5) _____ taking tourists around Boston. Right now, I'm (6) _____ for a job (7) _____ hotel management.



- Andrew
- CEO of Luxe Autos
- Sells expensive cars
- In Salt Lake City

My name's Andrew. I (8) _____ a company called Luxe Autos. We (9) _____ expensive cars. We're (10) _____ in Salt Lake City.

- 2.18 Listen and check your answers.

- 3 Write a short presentation of yourself. Use true information or invent information based on your ideal job. Use three or more useful phrases from Exercise 1.

Vocabulary Extra

Office equipment

1 Match the pictures with the words.

- ☒ 15 a briefcase
- ☐ a calculator
- ☐ a desk lamp
- ☐ a filing cabinet
- ☐ a folder
- ☐ a hole punch
- ☐ a keyboard
- ☐ a mouse
- ☐ a note pad
- ☐ paper clips
- ☐ a photocopier
- ☐ Post-its®
- ☐ a printer
- ☐ a screen
- ☐ a stapler
- ☐ a trash can

2 Work with a partner. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions.

What's number 1?

A printer.

What's number 2?

Paper clips.



Focus on work and job

1 Work with a partner. Complete the following questions with *job* or *work* and then ask each other the questions.

- a) Have you ever **had** a part-time _____?
- b) Would you like to _____ **abroad**?
- c) Do you know anybody who has a **dangerous** _____?

2 Make more questions by replacing the **highlighted** words in Exercise 1 with appropriate alternatives from the box.

applied for badly paid boring from home in marketing looked for lost outdoors
resigned from stressful well-paid

Ask and answer six more questions with your partner.

Review B

► Grammar Extra pages 132–137

Grammar

1 Put the adverbs of frequency in the correct position.

- We get up at 7:00 a.m. (always)
We always get up at 7:00 a.m.
- You get to class on time! (never)
- We eat meat. (occasionally)
- They are at home on Sunday evenings. (often)
- Cecilia goes out in the evening. (hardly ever)

Rewrite each sentence to make it true for you.

- I never get up at 7:00 a.m.*

2 Put the words in the correct order.

- this / My / pen / bought / me / son
My son bought me this pen.
- lend / you / cell phone / Could / your / me ?
- children / gave / They / their / their / money / to
- my / a / dad / making / cake / for / I'm
- email / you / send / an / Did / them ?



3 Put the words in the box in the correct column.

agree avoid can't stand choose decide
don't mind enjoy forget like love
need spend time want would like

Verbs + <i>ing</i> -form	Verbs + <i>to</i> -infinitive
<i>avoid</i>	<i>agree</i>

4 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in the box.

cheap expensive good-looking ~~healthy~~
noisy sensitive

- Jim runs and swims. He's the *healthiest* man I know.
- Jo is crying again. She's much more _____ than I thought.
- This old car only costs \$2,000! It's not as _____ as that new one.
- Matt is so handsome – he's the _____ man in the class!
- I have \$20. Which is the _____ suit in the shop?
- Be quiet, Max! ... Why are you so much _____ than Felipe?

5 Complete the text with the simple present or present progressive form of the verbs.



I (1 love) *love* shopping and I especially (2 like) _____ shopping for clothes! So I (3 have) _____ a lot of clothes. My boyfriend (4 not understand) _____. He (5 have) _____ four pairs of pants, two pairs of shoes, and ten T-shirts. Of course I never (6 wear) _____ most of my clothes. So right now I (7 try) _____ to ~~wear~~ my old clothes and I (8 not buy) _____ any more new clothes. I (9 save) _____ money, but I (10 look) _____ terrible!

6 Underline the correct words.

OK, everybody. Mr. Smith says the exam starts at 10:00 but we all (1) have to / can't arrive ten minutes before then. He says we (2) have to / don't have to register at the desk before the exam. We (3) can / have to take money, cell phones, pens, and pencils into the exam room with us, but we (4) can / can't take any large bags. Oh, and we (5) have to / can't turn off our cell phones.

7 Complete the conversation with the simple past or present perfect forms of the verbs.

A: Hi. I'm interested in the sales clerk job.
B: (1 you work) *Have you worked* in a store before?
A: No, but I (2 do) _____ lots of shopping!
B: Oh. (3 you have) _____ any other jobs?
A: Yes, I (4 be) _____ a waitress, and last year I (5 work) _____ as an au pair in Seattle. I (6 go) _____ to Seattle after I (7 finish) _____ school. Wonderful shopping!

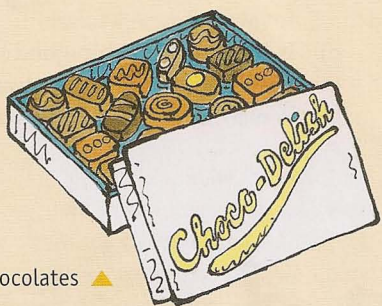
8 Find the mistake! Cross out the incorrect sentence.

- ~~I like always to read on trains.~~
 - I always like to read on trains.
- He bought me a very nice book.
 - He bought for me a very nice book.
- Do you want to go out tonight?
 - Do you want go out tonight?
- Ed is more older than Frank.
 - Ed is much older than Frank.
- It's too late for TV now. Please turn it off.
 - It's too late for TV now. Please turn off it.
- I've seen that new show on TV last week.
 - I saw that new show on TV last week.

Vocabulary

1 Put the words in the correct group.

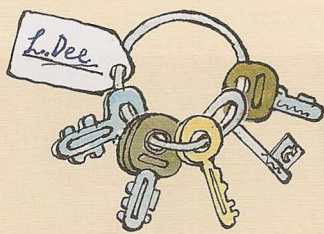
- a) a box of *chocolates*, *tissues*
- b) a bunch of ...
- c) a can of ...
- d) a bottle of ...



chocolates ▲



▲ beans



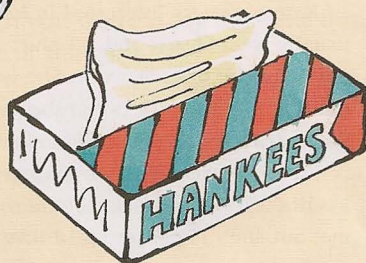
▲ keys



▲ paint



▲ perfume



▲ tissues



▲ flowers



wine ►

2 Underline the word that doesn't belong in each group.

- a) necklace cotton leather silk
- b) patterned plain boots striped
- c) earrings gloves shirt woolen
- d) checked jacket shoes skirt

3 Match the beginnings and endings to make questions.

- a) How long 1 do you watch movies in English?
- b) How far 2 do you know your teacher?
- c) How many 3 money did you spend today?
- d) How often 4 pairs of gloves do you have?
- e) How much 5 is it from your house to the store?
- f) How well 6 does it take you to get home in the evening?

Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

4 Write the numbers in words.

- a) $\frac{1}{2}$ a half
- b) 0.45
- c) $\frac{3}{4}$
- d) 58%
- e) \$23,000,000

5 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

- a) Please take 1 down here?
- b) What time do you get 2 your shoes off.
- c) Would you like to sit 3 after her toy mouse.
- d) My cat likes to run 4 up in the morning?

6 Underline the best collocation to complete the sentences.

- a) I don't like working every day. I want a full-time / part-time job.
- b) I don't earn much. I need to ask for advice / a pay-raise.
- c) Leave your job or stay – you should make a living / decision!
- d) I work all the time. I need some day / time off.
- e) Juan isn't working right now. He found / lost his job last week.

Pronunciation

1 Look at some words from Units 4–6. Say the words and add them to the table.

<u>advice</u>	afford	au pair	avoid	company
<u>doctor</u>	flowers	<u>horrible</u>	interested	
leather	quality	racket	receive	sandals
talented	valuable			

A: □ □	B: □ □	C: □ □ □
<u>doctor</u>	<u>advice</u>	<u>horrible</u>

2 Underline the stressed syllable in each word.

2.19 Listen, check, and repeat.

Reading & Listening

1 Read about Kate and Helena. Are these statements true or false?

- a) Kate is older than Helena.
- b) Kate and Helena are both successful.
- c) Kate and Helena both like to stay in shape.
- d) Kate and Helena have the same job.
- e) Kate and Helena wear the same kind of clothes.

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- a) Who earns more money?
- b) How does Kate exercise?
- c) How often does Helena go to the gym?
- d) Do Kate and Helena both have to dress up for work?
- e) Is their relationship good?
- f) Has their relationship always been good?
- g) Which sister is a good listener?

As different as

night and day



Sisters Kate and Helena Stewart talk about each other and how they get along together

Kate: "Helena and I have always been very different. She's a typical older sister – she's four years, four months, and four days older than me. She's ambitious, but I'm more relaxed about life and work."

5 Helena is the CEO of a small but successful company. She earns a lot of money and drives a beautiful car, but her job is more stressful than mine.

Helena has always been very sophisticated – you would never see her in a T-shirt – and normally
10 buys designer clothes. She loves to stay in shape and spends her free time in the gym. Walking to work and climbing the stairs is my exercise. I find it more interesting than the gym, and cheaper, too.

The best thing about Helena is her kindness. She
15 always buys beautiful gifts for everybody and never thinks about how much they cost. We've become much closer in the last five years but we're still completely different people."

Helena: "My relationship with Kate hasn't always
20 been easy. When we were younger, I had to take care of her because I was her older sister. These days, it's different. She's more confident, and our relationship is easier. She's been very successful in her work and her life. She works for a TV company as a researcher.
25 She doesn't earn as much as I do, but I think she's happier. She doesn't have to go to the office every day, like I do."

Kate isn't very interested in looking stylish. She usually wears jeans and a T-shirt – she can wear
30 anything she likes at work. She isn't in great shape, either. I like to work out at the gym four times a week, but Kate hates the gym. She never goes.

Kate is a great listener. If I have a problem, I know I can always talk to her. Kate is very different from me, but she's my sister and I love her."

3 2.20 Listen to Tom and Patsy and answer the questions.

- a) How are Tom and Patsy related?
- b) How does Patsy feel about Tom?

4 Listen again and underline the correct answers.

- a) Patsy is older / younger than Tom.
- b) Patsy / Tom is not very fashionable.
- c) Patsy always / never buys clothes for Tom.
- d) Patsy usually / never watches sports on TV.
- e) Tom likes / doesn't like sitting in the backyard.
- f) Patsy thinks Tom is very serious / very funny.



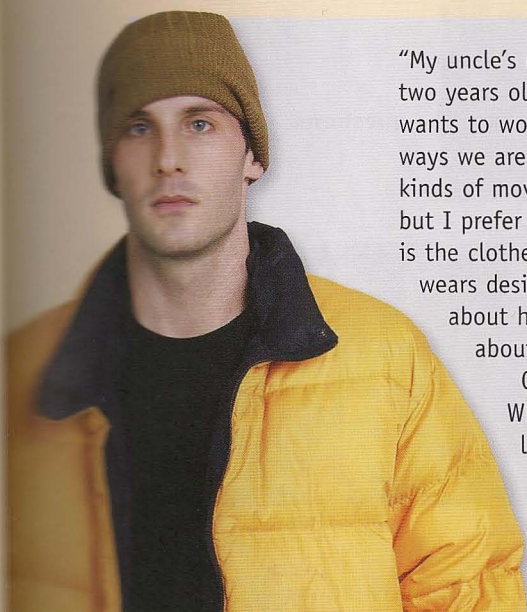
▲ Tom

▶ Patsy

Writing & Speaking

1 Read the description. Check (✓) the questions that are answered.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| a) What's his name? | f) What does he do? |
| b) How are you related? | g) Does he have any annoying habits? |
| c) What's the age difference between you? | h) What are his best points? |
| d) Do you have the same interests? | i) What do you think he's doing now? |
| e) Do you wear the same kinds of clothes? | |

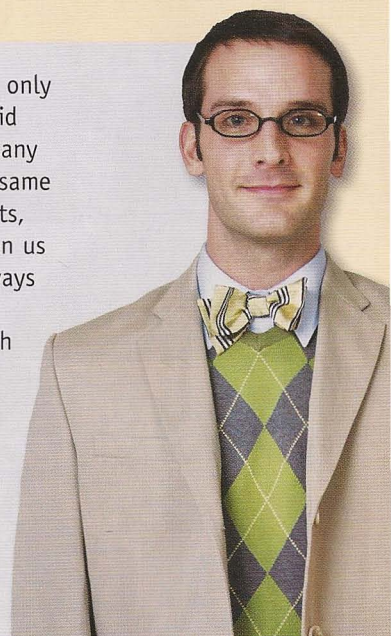


◀ Me

"My uncle's name is David. He's my mother's youngest brother and he's only two years older than me. We're both students at the same college. David wants to work as an architect, whereas I want to be an engineer. In many ways we are similar: we enjoy the same kind of music and we like the same kinds of movies. However, there are some differences. David loves sports, but I prefer to play games on my computer. Another difference between us is the clothes we wear. I'm happy in jeans and a T-shirt, but David always wears designer pants, shirts, and shoes. The only thing I don't like about him is that he talks too much about fashion and not enough about important things.

On the other hand, David is the nicest person I know. When I have a problem, I know David is always ready to listen and give me good advice. We've both become closer over the last year, and I now think of David as a friend as well as my uncle."

Uncle David ▶



2 Find the words/phrases from the box in the text and underline them.

both but however on the other hand
whereas

Complete the rules using the words/phrases in the box.

Expressing similarity

- a) You use *both* when you want to say the same thing about two people or things.

Expressing contrast

- b) _____ and _____ are often used to contrast ideas within the same sentence.
c) _____ and _____ are often used to contrast ideas in two different sentences.

3 Underline the correct expressions in these sentences.

- a) I like playing soccer. However / Whereas, my brother prefers tennis.
b) I like playing soccer, however / whereas my brother prefers tennis.
c) I can't stand watching sports. But / On the other hand, I love playing them.
d) I can't stand watching sports but / on the other hand I love playing them.

4 Write the words in the correct order.

- a) both / dancing / love / We
b) have / both / We / the USA / to / been

Work with a partner. Are the sentences true for you?

5 You're going to tell your partner about a member of your family and compare yourself with him/her.

- Choose some questions in Exercise 1 that you can answer.
- Think about what you're going to say and the language you will need.
- When you're ready, take turns telling each other about a member of your family.

6 Write a comparison between yourself and a member of your family. Try to answer as many of the questions in Exercise 1 as you can. Use the expressions in Exercise 2 to describe contrast and similarity.



▶ 2.21 Song: *Suspicious Minds*

Grammar Subject questions. Dynamic and stative meanings. Future forms

Vocabulary Climate change. Opinions. *have* and *have got*

Useful phrases On the telephone

Reading & Vocabulary

1 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and discuss the questions.

- What do you think is happening?
- Do people worry about climate change in your country?



2 Read the article. Are these statements true or false?

- World leaders participated in protest marches and demonstrations.
- The protestors carried banners and shouted political messages.
- A group of protesters on bicycles went to see the Prime Minister.
- They delivered a letter asking world leaders to do something immediately about the economy.
- Trafalgar Square was extremely crowded and very busy in the afternoon.
- A small group of protesters separated from the peaceful demonstrators and went shopping.

Climate change march

In London today, 20,000 people **took part in** protest marches and demonstrations as world leaders were meeting for climate change talks. The event was organized by the Campaign Against Global Warming.

The day started early outside the US embassy with poetry readings and speeches. 5 Protestors then marched slowly to Trafalgar Square, carrying banners and shouting **slogans**.

A group of protesters on bicycles **made their way** to the prime minister's office and delivered a letter to him **demanding urgent action on** climate change.

By three o'clock in the afternoon, Trafalgar Square was **swarming with people** and 10 **buzzing with activity**. There was a carnival atmosphere, with music provided by a samba band, a New Orleans jazz band, and Scottish pipers.

Most of the protesters marched peacefully, but a small group of people **broke away** from the peaceful demonstrators. They smashed store windows and tried to set fire to a grocery store. Five people were arrested.

3 Look at the **highlighted** phrases in the article. Find phrases with similar meanings in the sentences (a-f) in Exercise 2.

took part in = *participated in*

4 What evidence of climate change have you noticed in your country? What are you and your family, your local government, and your national government doing about it? Discuss with your partner.

Listening & Vocabulary

- 1 2.22 Listen to interviews with four protestors at the climate change march. Match each person with an opinion (1–4).



▲ Jo, 26

▲ Jake, 14

▲ Debbie, 37

▲ Carlos, 27

- 1 I'm in favor of protecting wild animals.
- 2 I'm against food imports.
- 3 I'm against big cars in the city.
- 4 I believe in responsible tourism.

- 2 Complete the sentences below with the words and phrases in the box.

against ~~anti~~ believe don't feel in favor really care support

- a) I'm not *anti* cars – I just think more people should use public transportation.
- b) I don't _____ about people. They can take care of themselves.
- c) I'm _____ of small family-run companies.
- d) I _____ in responsible tourism.
- e) I'm _____ cars in the city.
- f) I _____ local farmers.
- g) I _____ strongly about politics.

Which statements do you agree with? What other things do you feel strongly about? Discuss with your partner.

Grammar

Subject questions

subject object
John hates cars.

Subject question:
Who hates cars?

Object question:
What does John hate?

- 1 Look at the sentence and the questions (1 and 2) below. Answer questions (a–c).

subject verb object
Jo believes in responsible tourism.

- 1 Who believes in responsible tourism?
 - 2 What does Jo believe in?
- a) What is the subject of the main verb in question 1?
 - b) What is the subject of the main verb in question 2?
 - c) In questions where *Who* (*Which*, *What*, or *Whose*) is the subject of the verb, do you use *do*, *does*, or *did*?

- 2 Write questions for the missing subjects or objects.

- a) Mahatma Gandhi believed in [object]. What did Mahatma Gandhi believe in?
- b) [subject] said, "I have a dream" in a famous speech. Who said, "I have a dream" in a famous speech?
- c) "Slogan" means [object]. What ...
- d) [subject] has a boat called "Rainbow Warrior." Which organization ...
- e) Thirty-six million people protested against [object] in 2003. What ...
- f) [subject] fought against apartheid for over fifty years. Who ...

Ask your partner the questions. Choose answers from the box below.

Greenpeace Martin Luther King Nelson Mandela non-violent protest
political message the Iraq war

Pronunciation

- 1 Look at some words ending in *tion*. Say the words and add them to the table.

demonstration	destruction	education	explanation	globalization
modernization	organization	pollution	revolution	solution
A: □□□	B: □□□□	C: □□□□□		
	demonstration			

- 2  2.23 Listen, check, and repeat.

Grammar

Dynamic and stative meanings

Dynamic meanings

(something "happens")

He **has lunch** at 1:00 p.m.

He's **having lunch** now.

Note: use simple or progressive forms.

Stative meanings

(nothing "happens")

I **believe** in democracy.

We **want** to help.

Note: use simple forms only.

Some verbs (*have, look, think*) can have both meanings.

- 1 Look at the verbs in these extracts from the interviews on page 61. Answer the questions.

I'm having a good time with my friends. They're polluting our rivers.

- Do the verbs describe actions or states?
- What is the name of the tense used in each extract?

- 2 Rewrite these sentences by putting the verb in parentheses in the present progressive.

- A telephone (ring). *A telephone is ringing.*
- Birds (sing) ____.
- A teacher in another class (talk) ____.
- Rain (fall) ____.
- The traffic (make) a lot of noise ____.
- A student (laugh) ____.
- A clock (tick) ____.
- People (talk) ____.

Listen in silence for fifteen seconds and check (✓) the actions that are happening now. Note down other things that are happening now.

- 3 Look at the verbs in two more extracts from the interviews. Answer the questions.

I want to help polar bears. I have a car.

- Do the verbs describe actions or states?
- What is the name of the tense used in each extract?
- Is it possible to use a progressive tense with verbs when they describe a state?

- 4 Look at the verbs in parentheses. Do they describe an action or a state? Complete the sentences with the simple present or the present progressive.

- Sue (think) *is thinking* of going out this evening.
- Rosa (think) *thinks* politics is boring.
- Marta (have) ____ a TV in her bedroom.
- Julie (have) ____ difficulty with this exercise.
- Brian (look) ____ like his father.
- Rob (look) ____ for a new place to live.
- Jane (like) ____ James Bond movies.
- Tony (know) ____ how to play the piano.

Replace the names with names of students in the class to make as many true sentences as you can. Ask questions to help you.

Are you thinking of going out this evening?
Do you think politics is boring?



- 5 Grammar Extra 7, Part 1 page 138. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Speaking



1 Work in small groups. Discuss which of these activities are good/bad for the environment.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| a) Cycling to work/school. | g) Using public transportation. |
| b) Buying a hamburger in a plastic container. | h) Traveling alone in your car. |
| c) Paying more for environmentally friendly products. | i) Picking up trash. |
| d) Buying imported fruit and vegetables. | j) Drinking bottled water. |
| e) Using plastic bags for your shopping. | k) Recycling bottles. |
| f) Buying cheap, mass-produced clothes. | l) Traveling by plane. |

Think of any other activities that are either good or bad for the environment.

2 Do a survey to find out how many people have done the different activities in Exercise 1 in the last two weeks. Follow these instructions.

- Prepare the question you are going to ask for each activity.
 - a) Have you cycled to work/school in the last two weeks?
- Decide which person in the group is going to ask each question.
- Go around the class. Ask your question(s) and note down the answers.
- In your groups, write down the results of the survey for each activity.

Activities	Yes	No
cycled to work/school	✓✓✓	XXXXXXXXXXXX
bought a hamburger in a plastic container	✓✓✓✓✓✓✓✓✓✓	XXXXX

Writing

1 Read a survey report for Greenville, USA. Complete the report with one of the following phrases.

very green not very green

- 100% Everybody
- ↑
- Most people
- A large number of people
- Several people
- A small number of people
- (Only) a few people
- ↓
- 0% Nobody

SURVEY REPORT

How green are you?

Eco Magazine traveled to Greenville, USA, where they interviewed 1,000 people for a new survey. The aim of the survey was to find out how green the people of Greenville are.

According to the survey, only a few people have used public transportation in the last two weeks, but everybody has traveled alone in their car. Nobody has cycled to work. Several people have bought imported fruit and vegetables, and most people have bought a hamburger in a plastic container. However, only a few people have picked up trash.

A large number of people have drunk bottled water in the last two weeks, but only a few people have recycled their bottles.

The survey found that nobody has paid more for something because it is environmentally friendly.

Everybody has used plastic bags for their shopping, and several people have bought cheap, mass-produced clothes.

Finally, a small number of people have traveled by plane in the last two weeks.

The results of the survey suggest that the people of Greenville, USA, are ____.

2 Write a survey report for your class. Replace the underlined expressions in the Greenville report with information from your own survey in Speaking Exercise 2 above. Change other parts of the report if necessary.

Reading & Listening

1 Read this list of different duties that people volunteer to do in other countries. Which duties do you feel you could do / couldn't do? Compare with a partner.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a) work in an orphanage | e) teach English |
| b) teach children to read | f) help to construct houses, bridges, roads |
| c) take care of sick animals | g) do housework and help in people's homes |
| d) visit people in the hospital | h) plant trees and do organic farming |

Read the website information and match the projects (1 and 2) with the duties (a-h). Which duties does the information not mention?

WELCOME TO ORIGINAL VOLUNTEERS

- Change your life.
- Do something important.
- Learn new skills, gain self-confidence, and make friends for life.

1 Northern India

Volunteers live with a local family.

DUTIES: You help in people's homes, plant trees, and do organic farming. You can also try learning Hindi.

FREE TIME: You can go to festivals and go trekking in the Himalayas.

2 Ghana

Volunteers help at an orphanage.

DUTIES: You play with the children and teach them to read.

FREE TIME: You can visit the wonderful beaches or see the elephants in the National Park.



2 2.24 Listen to Helen and her friend. Which project is Helen going to join?

3 Check (✓) the things Helen says she's going to do.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| a) change her life ✓ | d) work with animals |
| b) get a better boyfriend | e) work in an orphanage |
| c) do something important | f) get a good salary |

Which of the two projects would you like to do? Tell your partner.

Grammar

Future: (be) going to

Future plans and intentions

How **are you going to** lose weight?

I'm going to do more exercise.

I'm not going to eat so much bread.

1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences from the conversation.

- I going to change my life.
- I'm not go to work with animals.
- How much are they going pay you?

2 Complete the sentence with the words *future* and *past* to describe the use of (be) going to.

You use (be) going to when you talk about a decision you made in the (1) ____ to do something in the (2) ____.

3 Write questions about the future with (be) going to.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a) drive home / after the class ? | d) buy any new clothes / this weekend |
| Are you going to drive home after the class? | e) do anything interesting / next week |
| b) watch TV / this evening ? | f) travel abroad / next year ? |
| c) learn another foreign language / one day ? | |

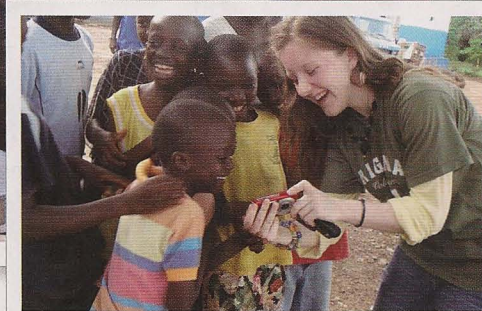
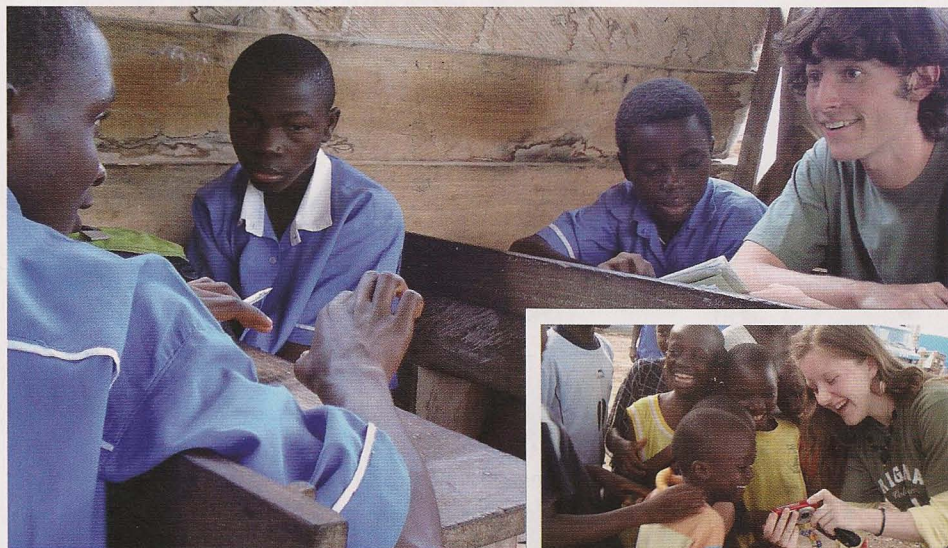
Ask your partner the questions.

Listening



- 1 2.25 Listen to a conversation between Helen and her mother about Helen's arrangements for her trip to Ghana. Underline the correct word.
 - a) Helen is confident / depressed / surprised.
 - b) Helen's mom is angry / embarrassed / worried.
- 2 Listen again and underline the correct information.
 - a) Helen is arriving in Accra at 10:00 a.m. / p.m.
 - b) Bob White is taking her to her school / accommodations.
 - c) She's staying with a Ghanaian / Nigerian family.
 - d) She's starting work on Wednesday / Monday.
 - e) She's working in a big / small town near Accra.
 - f) She's coming back in time for her mom's / dad's birthday.

In what situations do your parents worry about you?



Grammar

Future: present progressive

Future arrangements

He's arriving tomorrow.

She isn't coming with him tonight.

Where are you meeting them next week?

- 1 The sentences (a-f) in Listening Exercise 2 all use the present progressive to talk about the future. Is the following explanation true or false?
You can use the present progressive with a future time expression to talk about future arrangements.
- 2 In many situations, (be) going to and the present progressive are both possible. Put a check (✓) if both options are possible. Put a cross (X) if the present progressive is not possible.
 - a) I'm going to meet / meeting a friend after class. ✓
 - b) I'm going to start / starting guitar lessons one day. X
 - c) My friends are going to come / coming over this evening.
 - d) I'm going to see / seeing my grandparents this weekend.
 - e) I'm going to read / reading a novel in English one of these days.
 - f) I'm going to win / winning my tennis match this weekend!
 - g) I'm going to play / playing soccer on Monday.
 - h) I'm going to learn / learning Chinese one day.

Are any of these sentences true for you?

- 3 Pairwork Student A: page 118 Student B: page 123

- 4 Grammar Extra 7, Part 2 page 138. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Useful phrases

- 1 Mo Finkelstein (M) is calling a big chemicals company. Underline the most appropriate expressions to complete his conversation with the receptionist (R).



R: Good morning. Regal Chemicals.

M: (1) I want to speak to the CEO. / Could I speak to the CEO, please?

R: Do you mean Mr. Carr?

M: Yes, that's right. Mr. Carr.

R: (2) Who's speaking? / Who are you?

M: My name's Mo Finkelstein.

R: Hold on, please, and (3) I'll try to put you through. / I'll get him. ...

Hello. (4) He's not there. / I'm afraid Mr. Carr is out right now.

M: Oh. Do you know when he'll be back?

R: I'm not sure. (5) Would you like to leave a message? / You can leave a message.

M: Yes, please.

R: OK. (6) Wait. / Hold on a moment, please. OK, what would you like to say?

M: Please tell Mr. Carr that REGAL CHEMICALS IS POLLUTING THE ATMOSPHERE AND DESTROYING THE PLANET. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST GLOBAL WARMING ...

2.26 Listen and check your answers.

2 2.27 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

- Could I speak to the CEO, please?
- Who's speaking?
- I'll try to put you through.
- I'm afraid Mr. Carr is out right now.
- Would you like to leave a message?
- Hold on a moment, please.

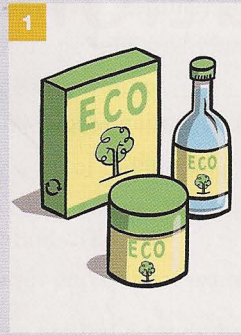
3 Work with a partner. Practice the conversation. Take turns being Mo and the receptionist.

Vocabulary Extra

Environmental problems and solutions

1 Match the pictures with the phrases.

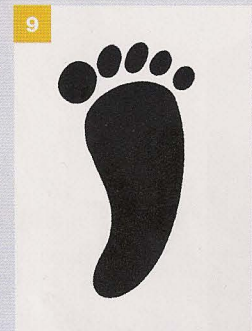
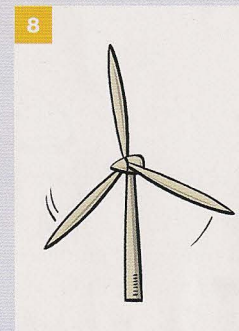
- 9 ☐ a carbon footprint
☐ environmentally friendly products
☐ global warming
☐ mass-produced clothes
☐ organic vegetables
☐ a plastic container
☐ public transportation
☐ a recycling bin
☐ renewable energy



2 Work with a partner. List the expressions from Exercise 1 under the following headings.

Problems	Solutions
global warming	organic vegetables

Add your own ideas to each list.



Focus on have / have got

1 Complete the sentences using *do*, *don't*, *got*, *have*, *haven't*.

- a) Do you have a car? Yes, I _____. No, I _____.
 b) Have you _____ a car? Yes, I _____. No, I _____.

Complete the sentence with *have/has* and *have / has got*.

When (1) _____ means to own or possess, you can also use (2) _____.

2 Write questions using *have / has got*.

- a) you / any brothers and sisters? *Have you got any brothers and sisters?*
 b) you / more than one credit card?
 c) you / a pet?
 d) you / a headache?
 e) your mother / the same eyes as you?
 f) your father / any hobbies?

Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

3 Look at some uses of *have*. Check (✓) the sentences where *have / has* can be replaced by *have / has got*.

- a) Do you have a laptop? ✓
 b) I always have lunch at home.
 c) My mother has short, gray hair.
 d) I don't have an MP3 player.
 e) Do you have any children?
 f) Are you having a birthday party this year?

Rewrite the sentences you have checked with *have got*.

- a) *Have you got a laptop?*

Education

Grammar Permission and obligation (*could / had to*). *should* and *must* for advice

Vocabulary Education and training

Situations Giving your opinion

Reading

1 You are going to read about a trainee geisha. Before you read, look at the sentences below and decide if you think they are true or false.

- A lot of women in Japan today want to become geishas.
- A geisha has to have a different kimono for every month of the year.
- To become a geisha, you have to study for many years.
- A geisha has to sing and dance for her customers.
- A geisha can't speak to her customers.
- A trainee geisha can go to high school.
- A geisha doesn't have to stay single.

2 Read the article and check your ideas in Exercise 1.

TRAINING TO BE A *Geisha*

The white face, the dark eyes and hair, the blood red lips – both the Japanese and foreigners are fascinated by these beautiful and mysterious women. Makiko is training to be a geisha. Not many girls want to become geishas in Japan today. Makiko's parents wanted her to go to college, study medicine, and become a doctor. But Makiko's grandfather paid for her training and bought the kimonos she needed. It's very expensive to become a geisha. You have to have a different kimono for each month of the year, and today a kimono can cost three million yen, that's about \$25,000.

It's a hard life for a trainee geisha. She has to leave her family and move into a special boarding house called a "maiko house." Here, she has to learn traditional Japanese arts such as playing instruments, the tea ceremony, flower arranging, singing, and dancing. She has to take a lot of difficult tests and exams. Only the best will pass all the tests and become geishas many years later.

We asked Makiko to describe exactly what a geisha does.

"A geisha has to serve customers and also entertain them. She has to sing and dance, and make conversation."

Does she enjoy her life as a trainee geisha?

"I love it, but it's hard work. Sometimes I get tired of wearing the kimonos and I want to put on a pair of jeans and go to high school like a normal teenager. But I can't have a normal life now. I don't mind. I feel very lucky."

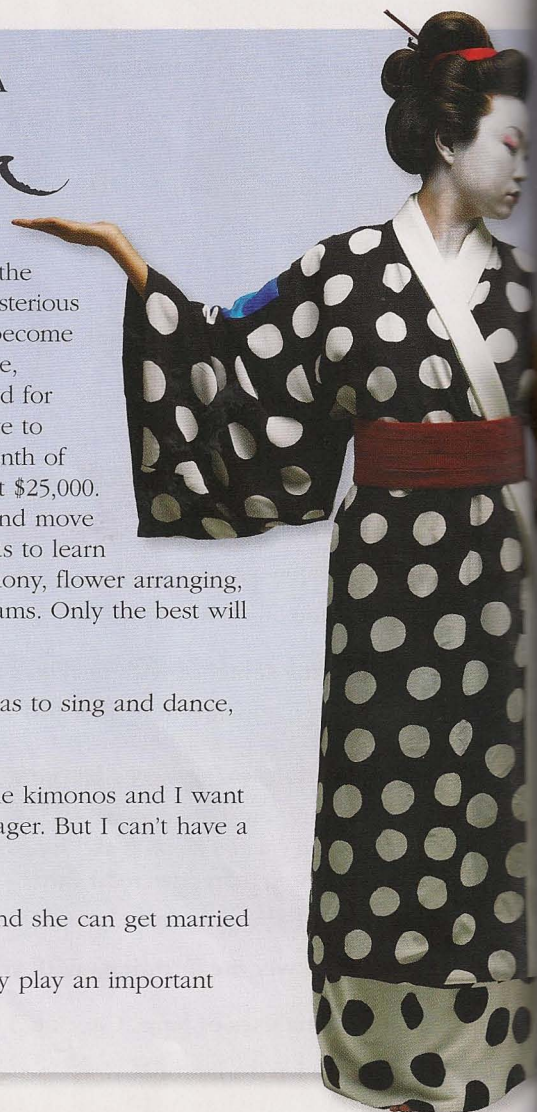
And what about later – can she have a family?

"Of course. A geisha can have relationships like anybody else and she can get married when she chooses."

In Japan today there are fewer than a thousand geishas, but they play an important role in preserving Japanese culture and history.

3 What did your parents/grandparents want you to study at school? Did you follow their advice? Tell a partner.

My parents wanted me to study science and become a doctor. I preferred languages and now I'm a teacher.



Vocabulary

1 Complete the following statements using words from the article on page 68.

- More and more people are *training* to be computer programmers. (line 3)
- Not many people want to _____ teachers nowadays. (line 3)
- If you _____ medicine, it takes seven years before you qualify as a doctor. (line 5)
- It can _____ a lot of money to go to college. (line 8)
- When they go to college, most students leave home and _____ into student accommodations. (line 9)
- If you fail your end of year exams, you can usually _____ them again a few months later. (line 12)
- You have to _____ an entrance exam if you want to go to college. (line 13)
- College students play an important _____ in the future of the country. (line 25)

2 Work in small groups. Are the statements in Exercise 1 true for your country?

Pronunciation

1 2.28 Listen and repeat the school subjects in the table. Notice the stress.

1: □	2: □□	3: □□□	4: □□□□	5: □□□□
art math	English music physics	chemistry history politics	biology geography technology philosophy	economics

2 Work with a partner. Discuss which subjects in Exercise 1 are/were ...

- the hardest/easiest to learn.
- the most boring/interesting.
- the least/most useful.

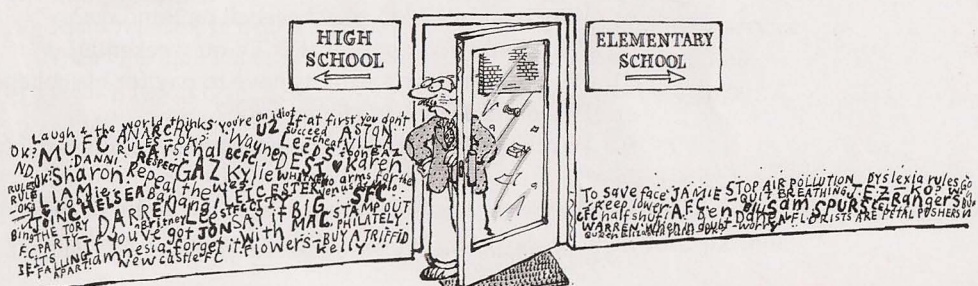
Speaking: anecdote

1 2.29 Listen to Andy talking about his favorite school subject. Underline the answers he gives.

- What was your favorite subject at school? Math / Art.
- Why did you particularly like this subject? It was easy / I was good at it.
- What was the teacher's name? Ms. Lewis / Mr. Lewis.
- What did she look like? She had long, black hair and wore bright colors / looked like a teacher.
- Why were her classes special? They were fun / interesting and varied.
- How many hours did you have a week? We had three / six hours a week.
- Did you learn anything which is useful to you today? Yes, I still love taking pictures / make a living as a photographer.

2 You're going to tell your partner about your favorite school subject.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about your favorite school subject.



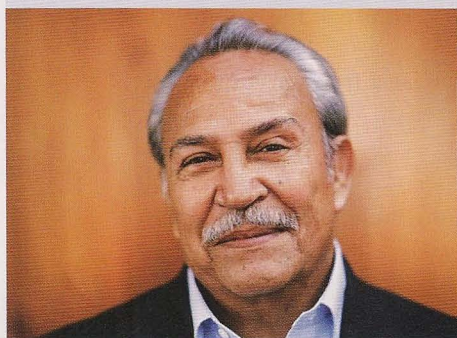
Reading

1 Look at the quotes from three men in the Bolzoni family. They are talking about their fathers. Try to match each quote with the man who said it.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| a) The grandfather | 1 "I've always had a very close relationship with my dad." |
| b) His son | 2 "My father was always at work." |
| c) His grandson | 3 "We had to obey him without question." |

2.30 Read the article and check your ideas.

Three generations



Aldo – the grandfather (72)

I think my son and my grandson have a good relationship – it wasn't like that when I was a boy. My father was a very strict man; we had to obey him without question.

I had to walk five kilometers to school. There was no other way of getting there. At home we didn't have a TV set, so we had to make our own entertainment. I spent all my free time outside playing baseball.

But we couldn't play baseball on Sundays because we had to go to church.

I left school when I was fourteen and went to work in a bakery. That's where I met Angela.

We couldn't bring girlfriends home in those days. We had to meet in public places. I suppose that's why so many people got married young. I was only nineteen, and Angela was eighteen.



Tony – his son (48)

When I was growing up, my father was always at work, and when he came home we couldn't disturb him because he was tired.

Because my father left school very early and regretted it afterwards, he wanted me to do well at school. I had to do my homework every night and I could only watch TV on weekends.

When I was eighteen, I went to college. My parents didn't have to support me financially, because I got a scholarship.

I didn't go home very often, even during vacations. I preferred spending time with my friends, especially my girlfriends. In my last year of college I met Luisa, and we got a place together. When I graduated from college, I had to get a job. Two years later, Luisa and I got married.



Paulie – his grandson (19)

I've always had a very close relationship with my dad and I don't have to hide anything from him.

When I was at school, I had a lot of freedom. When I went out, I didn't have to come home at a certain time – my parents trusted me.

I'm at college now, and my parents have to pay my tuition, but I have to work in the evenings to pay for any extras.

I think it's wrong that my parents have to pay my tuition. I think colleges should be free for everybody.

My girlfriend often stays with me at my parents' house, and I sometimes go and stay at her parents'. Both our parents think we should get married one day, but we're definitely not in a hurry.

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- Why did Aldo have to walk to school?
- Why couldn't Aldo play baseball on Sundays?
- Why could Tony only watch TV on weekends?
- Why didn't Tony's parents have to pay for his college education?
- When did Tony have to get a job?
- Why does Paulie have to work in the evenings?

3 In what ways has life changed in your family over the generations? Tell your partner.

My grandmother had to leave school at fourteen. She couldn't leave home until she got married.

Grammar

could and had to

Permission

I **could** only watch TV on Sundays.

We **couldn't** swear.

Could you bring girlfriends home?

Obligation

He **had to** walk to school.

They **didn't have to** come home early.

Did you **have to** pay your tuition?

- 1 Complete the following table with the different forms of *can* and *have to*.

	Permission: <i>can</i>		Obligation: <i>have to</i>	
	Permitted	Not permitted	Necessary	Not necessary
Present	You (1) <i>can</i>	You (3) _____	You (5) _____	You (7) _____
Past	You (2) _____	You (4) _____	You (6) _____	You (8) _____

- 2 Complete the questions and answers about the article on the Bolzoni family.

- a) Did Aldo *have to* obey his dad without question? Yes, he *did*. No, he *didn't*.
 b) Did Aldo *have to* go to church on Sundays? Yes, he _____. No, he _____.
 c) *Could* Aldo bring his girlfriends home? Yes, he _____. No, he _____.
 d) _____ Tony _____ do his homework every night? _____.
 e) _____ Paulie come home at any time? _____.
 f) Does Paulie *have to* hide things from his dad? _____.

2.31 Listen, check, and repeat.

Refer to the article on page 70 and answer the questions.

- 3 Ask a partner similar questions to the ones in Exercise 2.

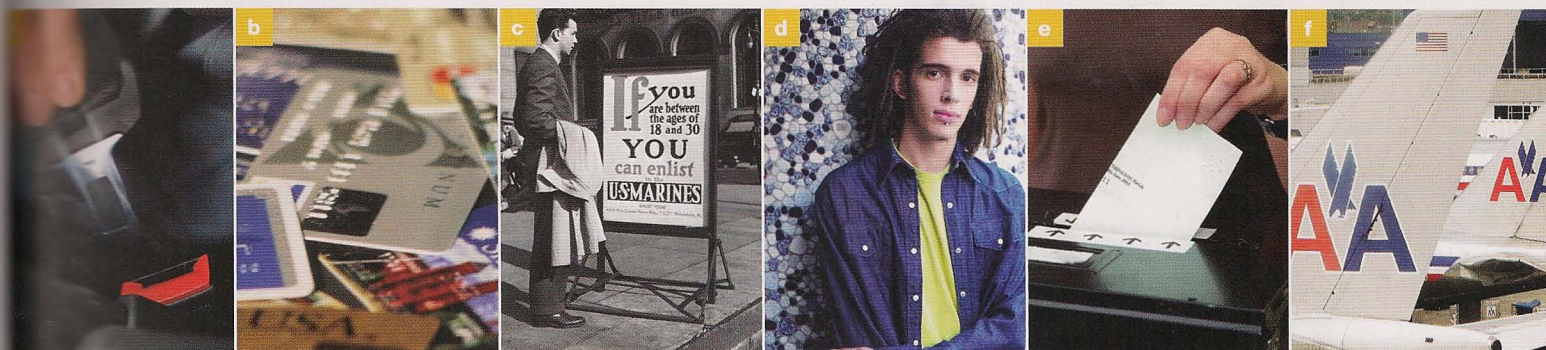
Did (Do) you have to obey your dad without question?

- 4 **Pairwork** Student A: page 118 Student B: page 123

- 5 **Grammar Extra 8, Part 1** page 140. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Listening

- 1 2.32 Listen to a conversation between Aldo (the grandfather) and Paulie (his grandson) in Paulie's car. Which of the following topics do they talk about?



▲ road travel

▲ money

▲ military service

▲ appearance

▲ politics

▲ air travel

- 2 Write sentences to summarize the differences between "then" and "now," according to the conversation. Use an appropriate form of *have to* or *can*.

- a) wear a seatbelt
 Now: You *have to* wear a seatbelt.
 Then: You *didn't have to* wear a seatbelt.
 b) wear a helmet
 c) use cash
 d) do military service
 e) have long hair
 f) wear earrings

Listen again to check your answers.

- 3 Which differences between "then" and "now" in Exercise 2 are true for your country? What other differences can you think of? Discuss with your partner.

Reading & Listening

- 1 Your friend is going to meet his girlfriend's parents for the first time. Look at the advice (a-f). Which piece of advice do you think is the most important?
 - a) Make a good first impression
 - b) Tell the truth
 - c) Wear the right clothes
 - d) Avoid controversial topics of conversation
 - e) Do some research
 - f) Be prepared to answer questions
- 2 Read the article. Label the paragraphs (1-6) with the pieces of advice (a-f) from Exercise 1. What other advice can you think of?

Meet the PARENTS

1 e) Do some research

Find out information about the parents before you meet them. Do you have anything in common with them? Have they been on vacation recently? You should ask your girlfriend/boyfriend about her/his parents' hobbies, interests, and favorite topics of conversation.

2 _____

It's fine to wear your old jeans and Nirvana T-shirt most of the time, but you should make an effort when you meet the parents. However, you shouldn't go to the opposite extreme: don't wear your "job interview" clothes. You should be neat and clean, but not too formal.

3 _____

First impressions are very important. You should greet them with a smile and a firm handshake for Dad, and maybe a quick kiss (on the cheek) for Mom. You mustn't call them by their first names. Wait until they give you permission.

4 _____

You should be honest about what you do. If you're an IT technician, you shouldn't say you're a research scientist, information architect, or web millionaire. If you're unemployed, you should tell them about your plans for a successful career.

5 _____

You probably don't share the same opinions or tastes about most things, so you must avoid subjects such as politics or religion. You can ask them about what your girlfriend or boyfriend was like as a child – parents love talking about their little prince or princess.

6 _____

You should think of a good answer to the question: What are you going to do in the future?

- 3  2.33 Listen to a young man meeting his girlfriend's parents for the first time. Check (✓) the advice in the article that he follows. Put a cross (X) next to the advice that he doesn't follow.

e) Do some research X

How do you think the evening continued?



Vocabulary

- 1 Complete these sentences using words from the article above.
 - a) I don't have anything in *common* with my parents. (paragraph 1)
 - b) I always make an _____ to stay in touch with old friends. (paragraph 2)
 - c) My living room is always _____ and clean. (paragraph 2)
 - d) It's more important for me to be happy than to have a successful _____. (paragraph 4)
 - e) I _____ the same opinions and tastes as my best friend. (paragraph 5)
- 2 Are any of the sentences in Exercise 1 true for you? Compare with a partner.

Grammar

should and must

I	
You	
He	should
She	shouldn't
It	must
We	mustn't
They	

1 Match the phrases (a–d) in bold with the meanings (1–4).

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| a) You should be honest about what you do. | 1 It's a bad idea. |
| b) You shouldn't say you're a research scientist. | 2 It's a <i>very</i> good idea. |
| c) You must avoid subjects such as politics or religion. | 3 It's a <i>very</i> bad idea. |
| d) You mustn't call them by their first names. | 4 It's a good idea. |

Choose the correct alternative in this sentence.

When you are giving advice, *must* is **stronger** / **weaker** than *should*.

2 Look at the situations and complete the sentences. Use *must* or *mustn't*, *should* or *shouldn't* and a verb in the box.

~~do~~ do forget hold speak watch

- One friend to another friend: "You *should* do more exercise."
- A doctor to a patient: "You _____ more exercise!"
- A father with his four-year-old child at the mall: "You _____ my hand!"
- A dentist to a patient: "You _____ to clean your teeth every day."
- An English teacher to her students: "You _____ English in class."
- A mother to her teenage son: "You _____ so much TV. It's bad for you."

Have you heard similar sentences recently? What was the situation? Tell a partner.

3 Grammar Extra 8, Part 2 page 140. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Reading & Speaking

1 Work with your partner. Use the words in the box to complete the advice below.

~~clothes~~ clothes directions funny pay shoes silent stomach time women work



HOW TO BE THE

Perfect girlfriend

- You should make an effort with your *clothes* and you shouldn't cut your hair: a man likes his girlfriend to look feminine.
- The way to a man's heart is through his _____. You should cook for him, and, if he's really hungry, don't give him salad.
- You must listen to him. He likes explaining how things _____.
- You shouldn't ask him to help you choose a pair of _____. He only has three pairs, and he thinks that's enough.
- You mustn't try to give him _____. Christopher Columbus didn't need them!

HOW TO BE THE

Perfect boyfriend

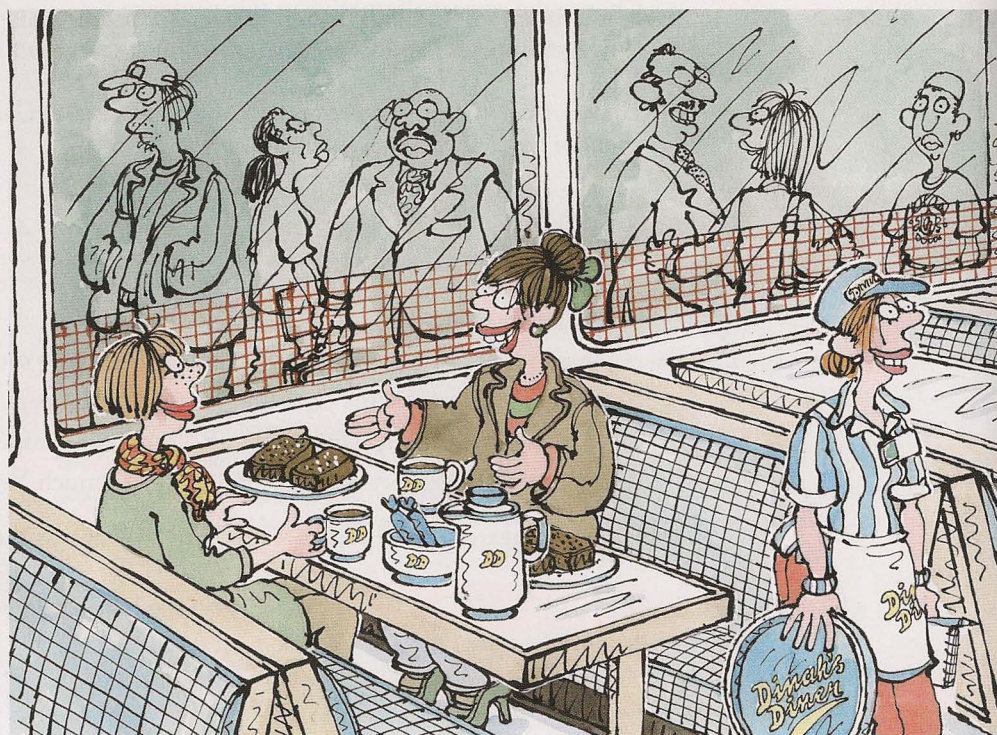
- You must arrive on _____ for dates – women hate it when you keep them waiting.
- You should _____ when you go out. Women want to be equal, but not that equal!
- You should be _____. You may be good-looking, well-dressed, and have the brains of Einstein, but if you can't make her laugh, forget it.
- You should remain _____. They want to do all the talking – even if you stop listening, pretend to be fascinated.
- You mustn't talk about other beautiful _____, even famous ones. She'll remember, and years later, when you make a comment about her cooking, she'll tell you to get Julia Roberts to make your lunch.

2 2.34 Listen and check your ideas. Do you agree with the advice? Discuss your real opinions about what makes a successful date.

Useful phrases

- 1 2.35 Listen to a conversation between two women. Look at the topics below and check (✓) the ones they talk about.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| a) Taking care of children | d) Leaving home |
| b) Taking care of the elderly | e) Education |
| c) Marriage | |



- 2 Complete the following sentences from the conversation in Exercise 1 with *I think* or *My daughter thinks* or *I don't think*.

- a) _____ mothers should stay at home and take care of the children.

Oh, yes, I agree.

- b) _____ children need their mothers at home.

Absolutely.

- c) _____ fathers should stay at home and take care of the children.

Oh, no, I don't agree with that.

- d) _____ couples should live together before they get married.

Oh, I'm not so sure.

- e) _____ young people should leave home when they're eighteen.

Well, it depends.

Listen to the conversation again and check your answers.

- 3 2.36 Listen and repeat the highlighted useful phrases in Exercise 2.

- 4 Look at the useful phrases for agreeing and disagreeing from Exercise 2. Arrange them in the right order on this line.

Agree — x — x — x — x — Disagree
Oh, yes, I agree.

- 5 Rewrite the statements from Exercise 2 with *I think* or *I don't think* to show your own opinions. Discuss your ideas with a partner.

Vocabulary Extra

Stages of education

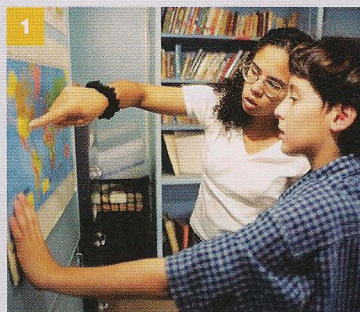
1 Match the pictures with the descriptions of the stages of education in the USA.

- ☒ 4 Age 3–4. Most children go to pre-school.
- ☐ Age 5. Most children start elementary school.
- ☐ Age 11. Everybody goes to middle school.
- ☐ Age 14–18. Students go to high school. A first-year high-school student is called a “freshman.” A second-year student is a “sophomore.” A third-year student is a “junior,” and a fourth-year student is a “senior.”
- ☐ Age 18+. Students go to college and study subjects such as law, medicine, sociology, etc.
- ☐ Age 21+. Students get their degree when they finish their courses and pass their final exams (finals).
- ☐ Age 21+. Some students study for higher degrees, such as a master’s degree (MA or MSc) or a doctorate (PhD).

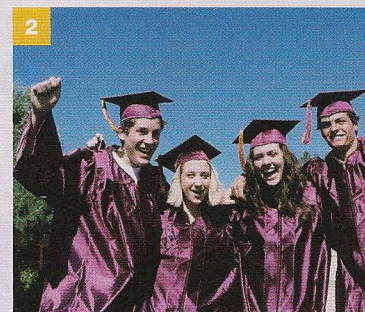
2 Are the stages and ages the same or different in your country?

3 Describe your own education up to now. Use as many of the highlighted phrases as possible.

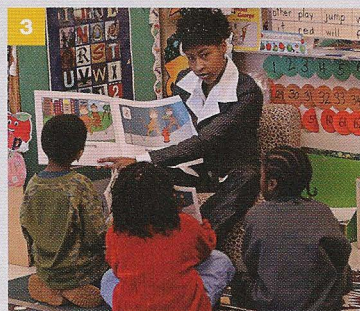
I went to pre-school when I was three. Then I ...



▲ high school



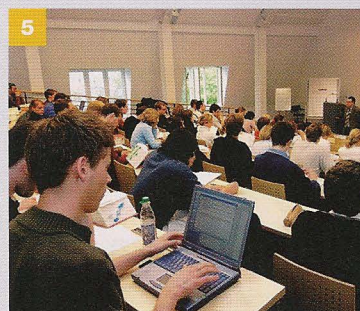
▲ college graduation



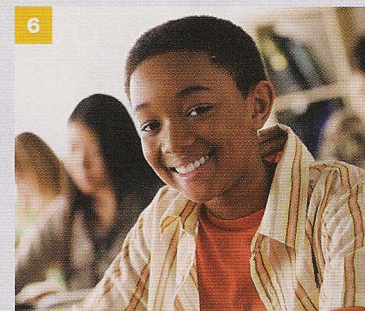
▲ elementary school



▲ pre-school



▲ college



▲ middle school



▲ college (higher degree)

Focus on words used with education

1 Complete these questions with the words in the box.

apply elementary fail go leave many study taken

- a) Did you go to pre-school? e) Is it easy to _____ for a place at college?
- b) At what age do children start _____ school? f) What did your parents _____ at college?
- c) Can students _____ school at sixteen? g) Have you ever _____ any English exams?
- d) How _____ years are students at high school? h) Did you pass or _____?

2 Answer the questions. Compare your answers with a partner.

Smile

Grammar Verb patterns. *for* and *since*. *been*. Present perfect: simple and progressive

Vocabulary The face. Character adjectives. Parts of the body

Useful phrases Using body idioms

Reading

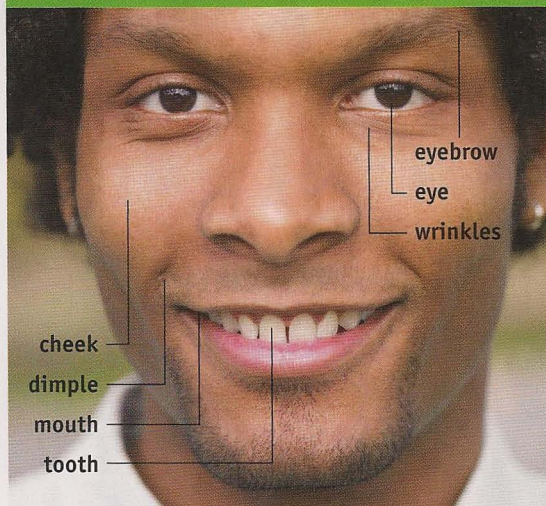
1 Look at this expression and discuss the questions with your partner.

- When do people say this?
- What do you say in your language?
- Do you find it easy to smile for pictures?

Say "cheese"!

2 Use five of the words from the picture to complete the following article about smiling. Choose an appropriate singular or plural form for each word.

"Smile and the world smiles with you.
Cry and you cry alone."



According to research from the USA, we smile for many different reasons.

There's the listener/response smile. When two people are having a conversation, the listener smiles to encourage the speaker.

There's the polite smile. This is the sort of smile you make when your aunt gives you an awful birthday gift.

There's the miserable smile. For example, when you go to the dentist, and he tells you that you need to have a (1) *tooth* taken out.

Very often, these social smiles are not real: they are frequently "fake" smiles. Fake smiles are easy to do – you just have to tighten the muscles in your (2) ____.

But there's only one smile that is the smile of true enjoyment. This smile is extremely hard to fake. It involves the muscles at the corners of the (3) ____ and the muscles around the eyes.

When someone gives a true smile, the (4) ____ get smaller, and you see little wrinkles around the edge. The eyebrows go up and, on some people, (5) ____ appear in their cheeks.

The genuine smile of enjoyment not only makes us feel good, but it makes others feel good, too.

3 How many different smiles are mentioned in the article? Can you do all these smiles? Show your partner.

Vocabulary

1 Match each group of adjectives with an appropriate noun to make common collocations for description.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------|
| a) thick / thin | 1 chin |
| b) pale / rosy | 2 eyebrows |
| c) curly / straight / wavy | 3 lips |
| d) full / thin | 4 teeth |
| e) square / pointed | 5 hair |
| f) straight / white | 6 cheeks |

2 Which features do you like on a man or a woman?

3 **Pairwork** Student A: page 119 Student B: page 124

Reading

- 1 The way you smile can show what sort of person you are. Read the article below and match one of the headings (a–d) with each paragraph (1–4).

a) Shy b) Sassy c) Confident d) Sociable

What's in a smile?



1 _____

This is the smile of a joker. The raised eyebrows and dimples in the cheeks show a good sense of humor and a warm personality. This sort of person is often a little bit of a rebel – they have no respect for authority.

2 _____

The wide, toothy smile shows that this person is easygoing and friendly. They enjoy being in a crowd and are good fun to go out with. They're always looking for the next party.

3 _____

The smile is in the eyes. This is a sensitive person, and a loyal friend. This sort of person thinks before they speak and is a good listener. They don't like being the center of attention and they aren't usually bossy.

4 _____

This is a smile that says, "I know it all." This type of person is very sure of themselves. They don't often feel nervous or insecure. They're hard-working, ambitious, and usually successful.

Read the article again and check your answers.

- 2 Think about your family, your friends, your co-workers. Can you match the descriptions (1–4) to anybody you know? Tell a partner.

Vocabulary

- 1 3.02 Listen and repeat adjectives from the text above.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| a) <u>ambitious</u> | 1 certain about his or her abilities |
| b) <u>bossy</u> | 2 continues to support a person in difficult times |
| c) <u>confident</u> | 3 really wants to become successful, rich, or famous |
| d) <u>easygoing</u> | 4 cares about other people's feelings |
| e) <u>insecure</u> | 5 friendly and enjoys being with other people |
| f) <u>loyal</u> | 6 not confident about yourself |
| g) <u>sassy</u> | 7 relaxed, calm, and not easy to upset |
| h) <u>sensitive</u> | 8 nervous in the company of other people |
| i) <u>shy</u> | 9 tells other people what to do all the time |
| j) <u>sociable</u> | 10 shows no respect for people in authority |

Match each adjective with its definition.

- 2 3.03 Listen to six different people talking. Choose the most appropriate adjective from Exercise 1 to describe each one.

1 *sociable*

- 3 Find out about your own personality! In your opinion, what is the best adjective to describe these five things? Use adjectives from the box or your own ideas.

addictive affectionate aggressive annoying calm deep dirty
faithful hot independent mysterious nasty selfish stormy strong

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 a dog = _____ | 3 a rat = _____ | 5 an ocean = _____ |
| 2 a cat = _____ | 4 coffee = _____ | |

- 3.04 Listen to find out the meaning of what you have written. Is it accurate? Tell your partner.

Reading

1 Read and answer the questionnaire below. Compare your score with a partner.

Optimist or pessimist – what are you?

For each situation, choose **a**, **b**, or **c** according to what you are most likely to say.
Then calculate your score and read what it means!

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1 You're taking a long walk in the countryside. It starts raining.</p> <p>a It always rains when I go for a walk.</p> <p>b It's OK – it's not snowing!</p> <p>c Great! I really enjoy walking in the rain.</p> | <p>4 You've got a cold.</p> <p>a I need to see a doctor as soon as possible.</p> <p>b I need to buy some tissues.</p> <p>c It's just a cold – it won't kill me.</p> |
| <p>2 It's fall.</p> <p>a I don't like the fall because it will soon be winter.</p> <p>b It's just another time of year.</p> <p>c It's a beautiful time of year.</p> | <p>5 You have to make an important life decision.</p> <p>a Whatever I decide to do, it will be the wrong decision.</p> <p>b I'm going to think carefully about my decision.</p> <p>c Whatever I decide to do, it will be the right decision.</p> |
| <p>3 It's your 40th birthday.</p> <p>a The best years of my life are over.</p> <p>b I'm getting older – so what? It happens to everybody.</p> <p>c Life begins at 40 – where's the party?!</p> | <p>6 You arrive home after a great vacation.</p> <p>a I don't want to go back to work.</p> <p>b I'm going to start planning my next vacation.</p> <p>c I'm looking forward to sleeping in my own bed.</p> |

HOW TO SCORE Each time you answer **a** **score 1**. Each time you answer **b** **score 2**. Each time you answer **c** **score 3**.

If you scored 15–18 ...

YOU'RE AN OPTIMIST! 😊

You are an optimist who always tries to see the positive side of life. You know how to enjoy yourself and you don't waste time worrying about things that may never happen. But be careful – your friends might find your optimism pretty irritating at times.

If you scored 10–14 ...

YOU'RE A REALIST! 😐

You are a realist. You know life has ups and downs, but you hope to have more good times than bad times in your life. But be careful – you can be too serious at times. You need to show your feelings a little bit more.

If you scored 6–9 ...

YOU'RE A PESSIMIST! ☹️

You are a pessimist. You need to try to stop having negative thoughts. You also need to learn how to enjoy the good things in life and stop worrying about things that may never happen. And remember, there are many people in worse situations than you.

2 Who got the highest score in the class? Find out.

Grammar & Vocabulary

Verb patterns 3

Verbs + *ing*-form

enjoy look forward to
stop waste time
I really enjoy **walking** in the rain.

Verbs + *to*-infinitive

decide hope need
want
I need **to see** a doctor.

1 Underline the correct structure. Refer to examples in the questionnaire above, if necessary.

- a) I hope getting / to get a new job soon.
- b) I want traveling / to travel around the world.
- c) I enjoy speaking / to speak English.
- d) I need spending / to spend more time at home.
- e) I never waste time worrying / to worry about the future.
- f) I'm looking forward to going out / go out tonight.

Are any sentences true for your partner? Ask questions to find out.

2 Use the same verb structures to write more sentences that are true for you. Compare them with your partner.

I hope to finish my studies soon.

Reading & Speaking

- 1 Work with a partner. Imagine you are describing your country to some people from another country. What would you say about the topics in the box?

the beaches the capital city the food the historic sites the mountains
the people

- 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box in Exercise 1.



Land of smiles Thailand

"Addictive!" This is how most visitors describe Thailand. After your first visit, you just have to go back again.

Visitors to the "Land of Smiles" have plenty to feel happy about.

- (1) *The people* are warm and welcoming. The cost of living is cheap, and the lifestyle is easygoing.
- (2) _____ is mouth-watering (and often mouth-burning!).
- (3) _____ and jungles of the north are perfect for trekking on elephant back.
- There are hundreds of islands, and (4) _____ are some of the best in the world. Some islands, like Ko Tao, are popular with scuba divers. Others, like Ko Pha Ngan, are well known for their full-moon parties. *The Beach*, a movie starring Leonardo DiCaprio, was shot on Ko Phi Phi.
- (5) _____, Bangkok, is one of the most vibrant cities on the planet. The spectacular Royal Palace is just one of (6) _____ to visit there.

- 3 Think about the following places. Tell your partner about them. Give details.

- A place where you've been on vacation and would like to return to.
- A place where you've been on vacation and would *not* like to return to.
- A place where you haven't been on vacation, but would like to visit.

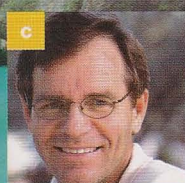
Listening



▲ Kay and Ramiro



▲ Cindy



▲ Hans

- 1 3.05 Listen to interviews with people on vacation in Thailand. Complete the statements with the correct names.

- Cindy likes swimming in the ocean.
- _____ has a dog.
- _____ goes shopping in the evening.
- _____ wants to take a cooking class.
- _____ both love Thai food.
- _____ thinks Thailand is a perfect place to live.

- 2 Replace the names in Exercise 1 with the names of students in the class. Make as many true sentences as you can. Ask questions to help you.



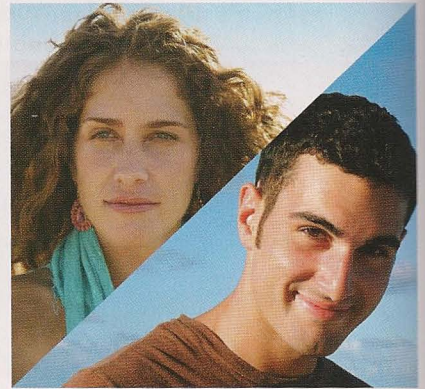
Listening

1  3.06 Listen to a radio show about people who came to Thailand on vacation and stayed. What jobs do Becky and Jeff have in Thailand?

2 Are the following statements true or false? Listen again and check your answers.

- Becky came to Thailand to look for work.
- Becky runs a bar on the beach.
- The tsunami in 2004 destroyed Becky's bar.
- Becky is married to a Thai man.
- Jeff is studying Thai.
- Jeff wants to go home.

▼ Becky



▲ Jeff

3 Apart from your own country, which country in the world would you like to live in? Tell a partner.

Grammar

for, since, and been

for + a period of time
for 24 hours

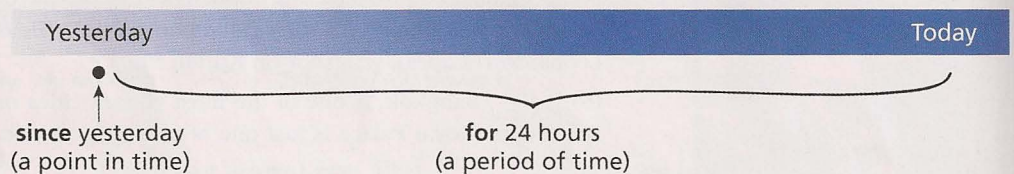
since + a point in time
since yesterday

been can be the past participle of *go* and *be*
I've never **been** to Cuba.
(*go*)
He's **been** here since May.
(*be*)

1 Complete the two sentences about Becky with *for* or *since*.

- Becky has been in Thailand ____ 2004.
- Becky hasn't been to the USA ____ a few years.

2 Look at the diagram and complete the table so that the information is correct, counting from today.



since		for
yesterday	=	24 hours
2004	=	____ years
Sunday	=	____ day(s)
my last birthday	=	____ month(s)
I last went abroad	=	____
I started studying English	=	____

Add more examples of your own to the table.

3 Read the sentences in Exercise 1 again. Discuss the questions with your partner.

- What tense are the underlined verbs in?
- In which sentence is *been* the past participle of *go*?
- In which sentence is *been* the past participle of *be*?

4 Make true sentences about yourself using the following prompts and an appropriate time expression with *since*, *for*, or *never*.

- not go to New York
I haven't been to New York since I was sixteen.
I haven't been to New York for years.
I've never been to New York!
- not go to a good party
- not go to the beach
- not go to a rock concert
- not go to a wedding
- not go out for dinner
- not go skiing
- not go abroad

Compare your sentences with your partner.

Grammar

Present perfect: simple & progressive

You can use the progressive form with most verbs.

I've been studying English since 2007.

Use the simple form for verbs with stative meanings.

I've had the same car for ten years.

- 1 Look at the table based on information from the radio show on page 80. Which "facts" (1, 2, or 3) describe *how long* each activity has continued?

1 Past facts	+	2 Present facts	→	3 Present perfect facts
Becky arrived in Thailand in 2004.	+	Becky's in Thailand now.	→	She's been in Thailand since 2004.
Jeff started working in a dive center six months ago.	+	Jeff's working in a dive center now.	→	He's been working in a dive center for six months.

- 2 Underline the verbs *be* and *work* in column 3 of the table. Discuss the questions with a partner.

- Which verb describes a state?
- Is it in the simple or progressive form of the present perfect?
- Which verb describes a continuous or repeated action?
- Is it in the simple or progressive form of the present perfect?

- 3 Complete these sentences with the simple or progressive form of the present perfect.

- I (study) *'ve been studying* English for about two years.
- I (be) _____ in this particular class since September.
- I (know) _____ my English teacher for a few months.
- I (have) _____ this textbook since I started the course.
- I (use) _____ the same English dictionary for a couple of years.
- I (want) _____ to learn Spanish since I first visited Argentina.

Change the time expressions if necessary so that the sentences are all true for you.

- 4 Find out how long your partner has been doing the things in Exercise 3. Ask questions beginning *How long ...?*

How long have you been studying English?

- 5 **Grammar Extra 9** page 142. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Pronunciation

- 1 Underline the two stressed words in each line of the chants.

A

How long has she been cooking?
How long has she been cleaning?
How long has she been shopping?
How long have you been sleeping?

B

How long has he been reading?
How long has he been playing?
How long has he been eating?
How long have you been waiting?

- 2  3.07 Listen, check, and repeat the chants.

Speaking

- 1 Write the name of ...

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| a) a café or bar you <u>go</u> to | e) a subject you <u>are</u> interested in |
| b) a neighbor you <u>know</u> | f) a TV show you <u>watch</u> |
| c) a type of music you <u>like</u> | g) a favorite possession you <u>have</u> |
| d) the house you <u>live</u> in | h) the place you <u>work</u> or <u>study</u> in |

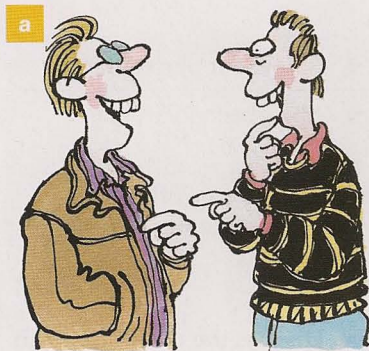
- 2 Use the underlined verbs in Exercise 1 and write sentences to describe *how long* each activity has continued. Tell your partner.

I've been going to the Bar Ipanema since 2004.
I've known my neighbor, Max, for six years.



Useful phrases

1 Work with a partner. Read conversations (a–e). Who's getting married?



Adam: I'm going to propose to Darina tonight.
Harry: Do you think she'll say yes?
Adam: I hope so. **Keep your arms / legs / fingers crossed** for me.



Beth: Wow! I love your ring. Are they real diamonds?
Darina: Of course!
Beth: I bet **it cost an eye and an ear / an arm and a leg / an eye and a tooth.**
Darina: Probably. Adam's a very generous man.



Darina: Have you seen Adam?
Harry: Yes, he was with a beautiful blonde woman.
Darina: What?
Harry: **I'm just pulling your hair / leg / teeth.** He's over there.
Darina: That's not funny.



Darina: **Can you give me a hand / a finger / an arm?**
Adam: OK, what do you want me to do?
Darina: Help me to write these wedding invitations.
Adam: Oh, OK.



Beth: What are you wearing to Darina and Adam's wedding?
Emma: I'm not invited.
Beth: Why not?
Emma: **My husband doesn't see cheek to cheek / head to head / eye to eye with Adam.**

2 Underline the correct alternative to complete the highlighted useful phrases.

3.08 Listen to the conversations and check your answers.

3 Match the useful phrases (a–e) with their meanings (1–5).

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a) Keep your fingers crossed for me. | 1 It was expensive. |
| b) It cost an arm and a leg. | 2 He doesn't get along well with him. |
| c) I'm pulling your leg. | 3 Wish me luck. |
| d) Can you give me a hand? | 4 I'm joking. |
| e) He doesn't see eye to eye with him. | 5 Can you help me? |

3.09 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

4 Work with your partner. Write a conversation including at least two of the useful phrases from Exercise 3.

Vocabulary Extra

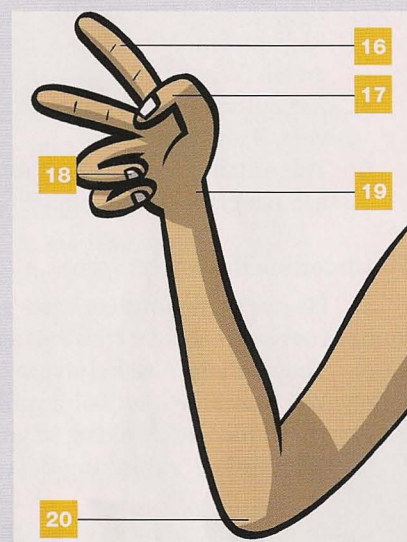
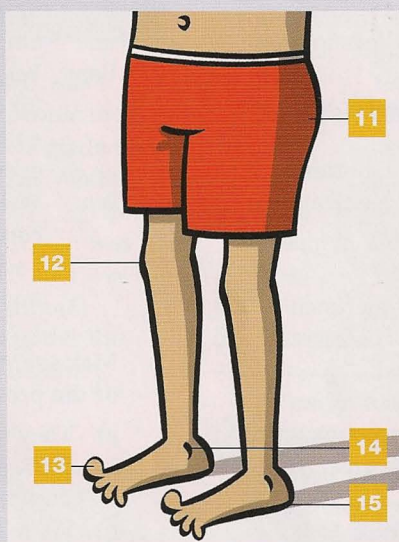
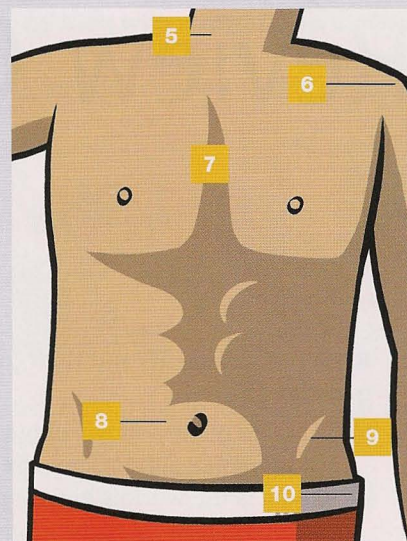
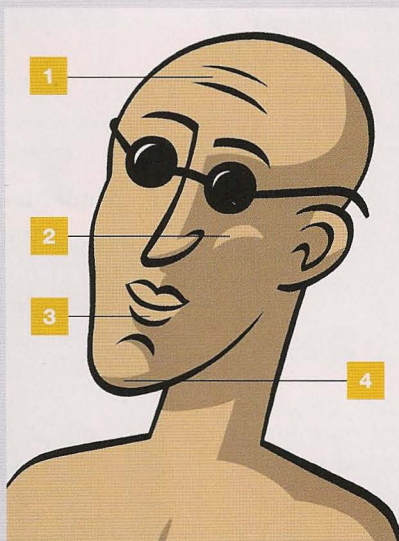
Parts of the body

1 Match the pictures with the words.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| ☒ 14 ankle | ☐ knee |
| ☐ bottom | ☐ lip |
| ☐ cheek | ☐ nail |
| ☐ chest | ☐ neck |
| ☐ chin | ☐ shoulder |
| ☐ elbow | ☐ stomach |
| ☐ finger | ☐ thumb |
| ☐ forehead | ☐ toe |
| ☐ heel | ☐ waist |
| ☐ hip | ☐ wrist |

2 Which of the nouns in Exercise 1 would you *not* expect to use in the plural when describing somebody?

bottom, chest, ...



Focus on verbs + *ing*-form or *to*-infinitive (with a change in meaning)

1 Choose the correct alternative to complete the sentences.

- Don't forget **mailing** / **to mail** those letters!
- I don't remember **getting** / **to get** home last night!
- He never forgot **kissing** / **to kiss** her for the first time.
- At last it's stopped **raining** / **to rain**.
- Could you remember **locking** / **to lock** the door when you go out?
- I have to stop **getting** / **to get** some gas on the way home.

2 Complete the table with the sentences from Exercise 1.

Using <i>remember, forget, stop</i>	Examples
1 remember / forget + <i>ing</i> -form: an action that somebody did. (Note: <i>forget</i> + <i>ing</i> -form is nearly always used with <i>never</i> .)	Sentences <i>b</i> and <i>c</i> .
2 remember / forget + <i>to</i> -infinitive: an action that somebody is/was supposed to do.	
3 stop + <i>ing</i> -form: an action that has stopped.	
4 stop + <i>to</i> -infinitive: the reason why somebody has stopped an action.	

Note: *begin, hate, like, love, prefer*, and *start* are verbs that can take the *ing*-form or the *to*-infinitive, usually with little change in meaning.

Write your own examples to add to the table.

Review C

► Grammar *Extra* pages 138–143

Grammar

1 Read the statements and then complete the questions.

- Al Gore made a movie about global warming. (What) *What did Al Gore make a movie about?*
- China is the world's biggest polluter. (Which country)
- The USA produces 100 million tons of garbage every year. (How much)
- Richard Branson wants Virgin Airlines to go green. (Who)
- 730 million people travel on passenger jets every year. (How many)
- The Alliance for Climate Protection protests against global warming. (Which organization)

2 Underline the correct words.

- He can't talk now. He has / 's having lunch.
- I love cars. I have / 'm having two Ferraris.
- They believe / 're believing in God.
- You look like / 're looking like your mom.
- We think / 're thinking of writing a book.
- She thinks / 's thinking Beyoncé is great.

3 Complete the sentences about the future. Use the present progressive for arrangements or (be) going to for intentions.

- I (see) 'm seeing a friend after lunch.
- I (visit) _____ New York one day.
- I (go) _____ on vacation with my family next month.
- My parents (come) _____ to my home this evening.
- I (buy) _____ a lottery ticket this weekend.
- I (have) _____ a meal with my friends on Friday.

Check (✓) the statements that are true for you.
Compare with a partner.

4 Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses in the *ing*-form or the *to*-infinitive.

- I enjoy (walk) walking in the rain.
- I've decided (take) _____ up a new sport.
- I'm not looking forward to (take) _____ my exams.
- I want (go) _____ to Los Angeles one day.
- I don't often waste time (watch) _____ TV.
- I need (spend) _____ less time at work.

Check (✓) the statements that are true for you.
Compare with your partner.

5 Underline the correct words.

- Ben: What was your school like?
Ian: It was very strict.
Ben: (1) Could you / Did you have to wear a uniform?
Ian: Yes, we did. We (2) couldn't / shouldn't wear any other clothes. We (3) should / had to wear our uniform all the time.
Ben: We (4) shouldn't / didn't have to wear a uniform at our school.
Ian: Oh, really?
Ben: Yes, but I think children (5) could / should wear a uniform. It's better – everyone looks the same.
Ian: Well, you (6) shouldn't / couldn't tell anyone, but I actually enjoyed wearing my uniform!



6 Make sentences using the simple or progressive form of the present perfect with *for* or *since*.

- They're living in Venezuela. They moved there in 2005. (since)
They've been living in Venezuela since 2005.
- We're learning the violin. We started two months ago. (for)
- She wants to be a vet. She decided this when she was six. (since)
- He's studying French. He started a year ago. (for)
- I know him. I met him when we were at school. (since)
- She has a motorcycle. She bought it three weeks ago. (for)

7 Find the mistake! Cross out the incorrect sentence.

- Who likes George Clooney?
 - ~~Who does like George Clooney?~~
- Don't worry – I believe you.
 - Don't worry – I'm believing you.
- We're visiting the USA one day.
 - We're going to visit the USA one day.
- Did you had to clean your room?
 - Did you have to clean your room?
- I'm looking forward to meeting you.
 - I'm looking forward to meet you.
- She's been here since four years.
 - She's been here for four years.

Vocabulary

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

action away ~~buzzing~~ part slogans
swarming way



Earlier today the center of Washington, DC was (1) buzzing with activity when a million people took (2) action in a demonstration. As protestors made their (3) way from Pennsylvania Avenue to The White House, one or two small groups broke (4) away from the main group and made trouble. However, it was mostly a peaceful protest. The downtown area was (5) swarming with people carrying banners with (6) slogans saying "Peace!" The protestors gathered under the Washington Monument and demanded urgent (7) part on global peace.

2 Put the words in the correct order.

- power / anti / I'm / nuclear
I'm anti nuclear power.
- against / in the city / using big cars / I'm
- feel strongly / global / I / warming / about / don't
- in favor / more money / of / I'm / for farmers
- about / politics / really care / don't / I
- I / wild animals / support / the protection of

Check (✓) the statements you agree with. Compare with a partner.

3 Match the two halves of the statements.

- 3
 - ...
 - Lots of young people want ...
 - More people are training to be ...
 - It's not easy to pass ...
 - A good education doesn't cost ...
 - College students usually move ...
 - Parents play an important ...
- actors and singers than ever before.
 - much money.
 - to become celebrities.
 - exams at school or college.
 - role in their children's education.
 - into student accommodations.

Check (✓) the statements that are true for your country. Compare with your partner.

4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

avoid career common ~~effort~~ neat
opinions



- Teacher: Now listen, Rosa. I'd like to see you make more of an (1) effort. You know, you have a successful (2) career ahead of you.
- Rosa: Yes, Ms. Bernstein.
- Teacher: Rose, I think you and I have a lot in (3) common.
- Rosa: Yes, Ms. Bernstein.
- Teacher: I was like you when I was your age. I feel we share the same (4) opinions.
- Rosa: Yes, Ms. Bernstein.
- Teacher: OK, please try to (5) avoid getting into trouble – and please keep your desk (6) neat and clean.
- Rosa: Yes, Ms. Bernstein.
- Teacher: Good. I'm glad we agree.
- Rosa: Yes, Ms. Bernstein.

5 Complete the description with the words in the box.

~~curly~~ full rosy square thick white

Tony is a tall man with short, (1) curly hair and blue eyes. He has fairly (2) full eyebrows and (3) rosy lips. He probably works outside, because his cheeks are (4) thick. He's very handsome and has a (5) square chin and (6) white teeth.

6 Complete the character adjectives.

- ambitious*
- b_ ssy*
- c_ nf_ d_ nt*
- _ _ syg_ _ ng*
- _ nd_ p_ nd_ nt*
- l_ y_ l*
- myst_ r_ _ s*
- s_ lf_ sh*

Pronunciation

1 Look at some words from Units 7–9. Say the words and add them to the table.

affectionate against believe biology
~~confident~~ ~~curly~~ degree democracy
earlier eyebrows forehead pointed
responsible sociable support tourism

A: ☐ ☐	B: ☐ ☐	C: ☐ ☐ ☐	D: ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
<u>curly</u>	<u>against</u>	<u>confident</u>	<u>affectionate</u>

2 Underline the stressed syllable in each word.

3.10 Listen, check, and repeat.

Reading & Listening

1 3.11 Read the article about Phil and Hazel Green.



The Greens

go green

Phil Green A few years ago, I lost my job, and my life changed completely. I became interested in green issues, and I started worrying about climate change. Then last summer, I decided

5 I really wanted to do something to help the planet. I talked to Hazel and the children, and we decided to go green.

Since then, we've made some big changes to our life. First, we sold our cars – we had

10 two. That wasn't a problem because we live in a town and there's good public transportation. Anyway, I've always liked walking and we've all got bikes now. We've stopped eating meat and started eating more vegetables. We don't

15 go to the grocery store, but we buy and eat food from local farmers, and I grow a lot of our vegetables in the garden. It's great! We've saved a lot of money because we don't buy things we don't need. Next week, I'm getting some hens,

20 so we can have our own eggs. I can't wait!

Hazel Green When Phil asked me to make some changes to our life, I was a bit nervous. But I knew that he was serious about it, so I

25 said yes. Since then, life has been hard work. Of course, I'm worried about what's happening in the world, but we had a very nice, comfortable, easy life before.

When Phil said we had to sell my car, I cried. I hate walking everywhere and I don't like public

30 transportation. But I miss my vacations most. We always flew to warm places like Mexico or Florida, but this year we took the train to Pennsylvania. It rained all week. It was awful. We eat very healthily now, though. Before, I didn't

35 think about where our food came from, but now I've learned to cook some very interesting vegetables.

I'm a teacher and, you know, a lot of my students are very worried about the environment.

40 I try to teach them what they can do to help protect the planet.

But I want to enjoy life, too! So, now we've decided that we can fly somewhere once a year. We're going to Hawaii next year. I'm really

45 looking forward to having a vacation in the sun.

Who do you think said these things: Phil or Hazel?

- I miss my car.
- I love my new life.
- I think we made the right decision, but it's difficult.

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- When did Phil and Hazel decide to go green?
- Who likes walking?
- Where does the family's food come from now?
- Why have they saved money?
- What does Hazel miss most about her old life?
- Who works in a school?
- Where did the family go on vacation this year?

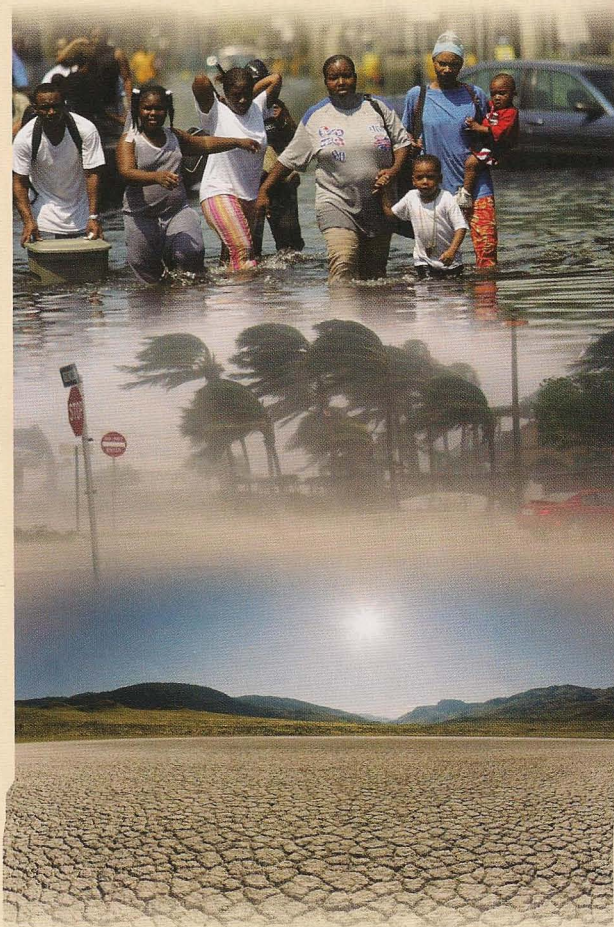
3 Work with a partner. What do you think about Phil and Hazel's changes? Could you make similar changes in your life?

4 3.12 Listen to the Green children, Kyle and Naomi. Underline the correct information.

- Kyle and Naomi think that climate change is / isn't a problem.
- Kyle and Naomi think that it is / isn't important to make changes to our lives.

5 Listen again. Are these statements true or false?

- Before he lost his job, Phil was a pilot. *False*.
- Kyle says his dad changed after he lost his job.
- Naomi didn't want to make changes to her life.
- Kyle says he would like to get a car when he's older.
- Naomi's friends think she's bossy.
- Kyle's friends think climate change isn't a problem.



Writing & Speaking

- 1 Read the email from Meg to her friend, Joe. There is one word missing in each line. Find the missing words in the box and put them in the correct places in the email.

be but can for forward going have last 'm my should
tell vacation

Hi Joe,

- ① Guess what! I bought a lottery ticket ^{last} week, and I won \$3 million!!!
I so excited.
- ② I'm going to make some big changes in my life, starting with job. I'm leaving today!
I've decided I'm going to go to college. I've always wanted to be a doctor, my
parents couldn't pay for my studies. Now I finally do it!
- ③ I'm going to split up with Kenny tomorrow. We nothing in common, and he doesn't
like my friends. I don't want a boyfriend now. I'm going to too busy with my studies!
- ④ And I'm moving out of my sister's apartment tomorrow. I'm looking to that. She's so bossy!
I'm going to buy a house of my own. Do you think I give some money to my sister?
- ⑤ But it's not all me, me, me! I want to do something worthwhile, too. I'm to give some
money to Greenpeace. But first I'm planning a in a warm place. Do you want to come
to the Caribbean with me, Joe? I'll pay your ticket!

Don't Kenny I won this money.

Love,

Meg

- 2 Match the headings to the paragraphs (1-5) in the email.

- a) Living arrangements – Paragraph 4
- b) Travel plans and other ideas
- c) Job and studies
- d) Announcing your news
- e) Relationships

- 3 Imagine you've won \$1 million. What changes are you going to make to your life? Think about the things in the headings (a-e) in Exercise 2.

- 4 Tell a partner about the changes you are going to make to your life.

I'm going to buy a new apartment for my parents and me.

- 5 Write an email to a friend about the changes you are going to make to your life. Use the headings in Exercise 2 to organize your email.



3.13 Song: Money

Grammar *will*. Future time clauses after *when, if, as soon as*. *used to*

Vocabulary Collocations. Food and cooking. Cars and driving

Useful phrases Idioms with food

Reading & Vocabulary

1 Work with a partner. Look at the picture of Chiako and guess the answers to the following questions.

- What time does she get up in the morning?
- How old is she?
- Where does she come from?
- What kind of diet does she have?
- Does she have a stressful life?

Read the text and find out if you guessed correctly.

How not to die before you get old

Chiako is active and healthy. She gets up at 7:00 a.m. every day and goes for a brisk walk. Three times a week, she plays gate-ball – a popular national sport – with her friends. There is nothing unusual about this, except that Chiako is 102 years old. She is not alone – there are hundreds of centenarians who lead healthy lives like this in Okinawa.

- 5 Okinawa is a group of Japanese islands between Japan and Taiwan. Near a beach, there is a large stone with the following proverb engraved on it: “At 70 you are still a child; at 80 you are just a youth; and at 90, if the ancestors invite you into heaven, ask them to wait until you are 100, and then you might consider it.”

- 10 Okinawans manage to stay slim in old age by eating a low-calorie diet which consists of three quarters plant food and one quarter animal food. They eat seven servings of fruit and vegetables every day and they stop eating when they are 80% full. They also keep physically active the natural way by dancing, doing martial arts, walking, and gardening. In other words, they do the things they enjoy.

- 15 Okinawans have developed a stress-resistant personality. Nobody is in a hurry, timetables are non-existent, and there is always tomorrow. Hundreds of people, both young and old, go to the beach every day to watch the spectacular sunsets. In Okinawa, there is always time to watch the sun set.

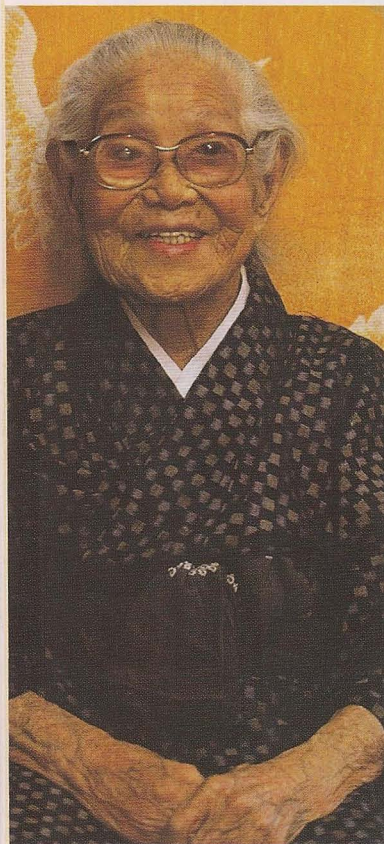
- 20 As well as large extended families, Okinawans have strong networks of friends. When someone is sick and doesn't come to work, a neighbor will always knock on their door to find out how they are.

There's no magic pill. If you stay in shape, if you have good friends, a healthy diet, and a stress-free lifestyle, you will live longer. It's as simple as that!

2 Complete these collocations with words from the article.

- How often do you go for a *brisk* walk?
- Do you think you *live* a healthy life?
- Do you know anybody who does martial a_____?
- Do you feel that you are always in a h_____?
- When was the last time you watched a spectacular s_____?
- Do you have a large extended f_____?
- Do you have a strong n_____ of friends?
- What's your favorite way to s_____ in shape?

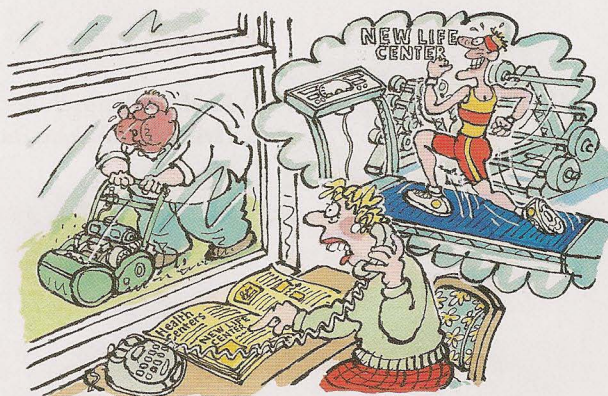
Ask your partner the questions. Is your lifestyle similar to or different from the lifestyle in Okinawa?



Listening & Grammar

- 1 3.14 Listen to a woman calling for information about a health spa called the New Life Center. Answer the questions.

- Why does she want the information?
- Do you think her husband will like her idea? Why? / Why not?



will

I'll

You'll

He'll come back.

She'll be OK.

It'll go away.

We'll

They'll

Will you see her?

Yes, I will.

No, I won't.

('ll = will

won't = will not)

- 2 Complete the questions and answers about the activities at the New Life Center.

- Will he take a fitness test? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- Will he do yoga? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- _____ he have a cigarette? Yes, he _____. No, he _____.
- _____ he have a sauna and a jacuzzi? _____ . _____ .
- _____ he go for a four-hour walk? _____ . _____ .
- _____ he have time to relax in the afternoon? _____ . _____ .

- 3.15 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 2.

Are there any health spas in your country? Would you like to go to one? Why? / Why not?

Grammar

- 1 Look at these sentences from the Listening section above and answer the questions.

Conjunction	+	Subordinate clause	+	Main clause
As soon as	+	he arrives,	+	he'll take a fitness test.
If	+	he has a cigarette,	+	he'll be in big trouble.
When	+	he finishes the week,	+	he'll feel like a new man.

- Do the sentences refer to past, present, or future time?
- Which verb form is used in the main clause?
- Which verb form is used in the subordinate clause?

Which of the conjunctions suggest ...

- it is *possible* that one action will follow another action?
- it is *certain* that one action will follow another action at some time?
- it is *certain* that one action will *immediately* follow another action?

- 2 Underline the correct verb forms.

- If there's nothing good on TV this evening, I go / I'll go out.
- I'm going to go straight home as soon as the class will finish / finishes.
- When I'll go / go on vacation next summer, I'll send all my friends postcards.
- I'm going to retire as soon as I'm / 'll be sixty.
- When I'll have / have enough money, I'm going to buy some new clothes.
- If I get up early tomorrow, I think I go / 'll go for a run.

How many sentences are true for you? Rewrite the sentences so that they are all true for you.

- 3 Grammar Extra 10, Part 1 page 144. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Future time clauses

conjunction - if, when,

as soon as

subordinate clause =

present form

main clause = future form

If I go, will you come, too?

As soon as they arrive, we'll start.

You can also put the main clause first.

I'm going to buy a car when I pass my test.

Vocabulary

- 1 Look at the pictures of Nick's food shopping. Then look at his shopping list. Which five items did he forget to buy?



FRUIT AND VEGETABLES

lemons, oranges, cherries,
grapes, peaches, mushrooms,
tomatoes, lettuce, spinach,
carrots, cauliflower,
eggplant, red peppers,
cucumber, onions, garlic

MEAT AND FISH

a chicken, sausages,
a trout, shrimp, sardines

OTHER

tea, soup, nuts, beans



- 2 Look at the shopping list again and complete the task.

- Circle the items of food you have eaten in the last three days.
- Underline the items you really like.
- Cross out the items you don't like very much.

Compare with a partner. What items of food are *always* on your shopping list?



Pronunciation

- 1 3.16 Listen and repeat the words in column A and column B. Notice the vowel sounds in red.

A

- a) lettuce
- b) onion
- c) chicken
- d) sardines
- e) mushroom

B

- 1 nut
- 2 beans
- 3 lemon
- 4 soup
- 5 spinach

- 2 3.17 Match a word from column A with a word from column B according to the red vowel sounds. Listen and check your answers.

Which word do you find the most difficult to say?

Reading & Vocabulary

- 1 Read this extract from a website about bananas. Check (✓) the dishes you would like to try. Put a cross (X) next to the ones you wouldn't like to try.



104 THINGS TO DO WITH A **BANANA**

by Wayne M. Hilburn I like bananas. I respect bananas. I find bananas interesting. But I don't love bananas. My wife loves bananas and she eats them every day. So do I, but eating a fresh banana every day has become a bit boring. That's why I have collected 104 recipes for bananas. Here are some of the ways you can eat bananas.

Click on the dish to see the complete recipe. You can ...

- ☐ peel them, cut them in half, and fry them in butter
- ☐ boil them in milk with sugar and coconut
- ☐ broil them with brown sugar on top
- ☐ mix them with rice for a Cuban dish
- ☐ bake them in the oven in their skin
- ☐ fry them in batter to make banana fritters
- ☐ slice them in half and add vanilla ice cream to make a banana-split
- ☐ chop them and eat them raw in fresh fruit salads

So you see, there's a lot you can do with a banana!



- 2 Read the list of dishes again and note down words which describe ...

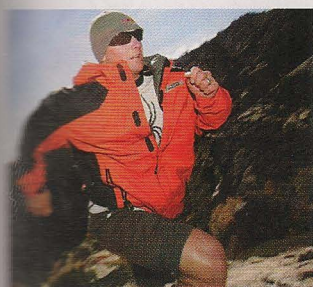
- a) different ways of preparing food (*peel*, ...)
- b) different ways of cooking food (*boil*, ...)
- c) one word meaning *not cooked*

- 3 Write down the name of your favorite dish. Think about these questions.

- What ingredients do you need?
- How do you prepare the ingredients?
- How do you cook the ingredients?

Tell a partner about your favorite dish.

Speaking: anecdote



▲ Darren

- 1 3.18 Listen to Josh talking about the healthiest person he knows. Underline the correct information.

- a) Who is the healthiest person you know? My uncle / cousin.
- b) How old is he? He's 36 / 26.
- c) What does he do for a living? He's training to be an army officer / a naval officer.
- d) What does he look like? He's tall and slim / tall and well built.
- e) What does he do to stay healthy and in great shape? He goes to the gym / runs up mountains.
- f) What kind of food does he eat? He eats a high-calorie / vegetarian diet.
- g) Has he ever been unhealthy or in bad shape? He used to be really lazy / very unhealthy.

- 2 You are going to tell your partner about the healthiest person you know.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about the healthiest person you know.

Reading

- 1 3.19 Read three descriptions of people's first cars. Match each description (a–c) with one of the cars (1–3).

My first car



My first car was a Citroën 2CV. Somebody gave it to me and it was very old. It used to break down almost every time I went out in it.

One day, it was raining heavily, and the windshield wiper fell off. I couldn't see the road! I had to stop and wait for the rain to stop.

I used to have a love-hate relationship with that car – I loved it when it worked, but I hated it when it broke down.



It wasn't my car, it was my boyfriend's. It was a blue VW Beetle with a sunroof.

Every weekend, we used to drive out of town with our tent in the back and drive until we felt like stopping.

It wasn't a big car, but I remember one weekend, we went to Santa Barbara with four friends. There were six of us in this little car! I don't think we took any luggage, because there wasn't any room for suitcases. The engine was in the back, and there was only a tiny trunk in the front. But we didn't use to worry about that sort of thing when we were younger.



Daddy gave me my first car for my 17th birthday. I didn't even have my driver's license. It was a little red Porsche with a blue steering wheel and blue seats. It was cute, but I didn't use it much because I used to prefer motorcycles. All my boyfriends had big motorcycles.

My daddy used to introduce me to all these nice guys – lawyers and businessmen – but I wasn't interested in them.

My poor daddy – I used to drive him crazy.



- 2 Answer the questions from memory. Then read and check your answers.

- Which car was very old?
- Which car had blue seats?
- Which car broke down a lot?
- Which car had a tiny trunk in the front?
- Which car was a 17th birthday present?
- Which car didn't have much room for luggage?

- 3 What was the first car you drove? Or what was the first car you remember going in as a child? Describe it to your partner.



Vocabulary

- 1 Find the names of six parts of a car in the descriptions on page 92.

windshield wiper, ...

- 2 Imagine you are going to buy a new car. Put the features in the box into the table below according to how important you think they are. Compare with a partner.

air conditioning easy to park economical to run environmentally friendly
good sound system large trunk leather seats made in my country
nice color powerful engine satellite navigation system sunroof

Important	Not important
easy to park	air conditioning

Grammar

used to + infinitive

My father **used to** be slim.

He **didn't use to** eat much.

Did he **use to** ride a bike?

Yes, he did.

No, he didn't.

- 1 Look at these extracts from the texts on page 92. Match each underlined verb structure with a description.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| a) Every weekend, <u>we used to drive</u> out of town ... | 1 a single action in the past |
| b) ... one weekend, <u>we went</u> to Santa Barbara ... | 2 a repeated action in the past |
| c) <u>I used to have</u> a love-hate relationship with that car ... | 3 a state in the past |

Is it possible to use *used to* + infinitive to talk about a single action in the past?

- 2 Look at the sentences. Where possible, replace the simple past with *used to* or *didn't use to* + infinitive.

When I was a child, ...

- my parents had a big old car. *my parents used to have a big old car.*
- my mother drove me to school every day.
- I didn't like going on long trips. *I got* car sick.
- one summer we went to Arizona on a camping trip.
- my father never washed the car. *It always looked* dirty.
- my parents sold the car and bought a smaller one.

Change the sentences so that they are true for you. Compare your sentences with a partner.

- 3 **Pairwork** Student A: page 119 Student B: page 124

- 4 **Grammar Extra 10, Part 2** page 144. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Speaking: anecdote

- 1 3.20 Listen to Patti talking about her dream car. Underline the correct information.

- What kind of car is it? A **Chevrolet** / **Jaguar**.
- Is it a modern car, or is it an old model? It's **old** / **new**.
- What color is it? It's **light blue** / **black**.
- What's it like inside? It's **small** / **spacious**.
- What kind of seats does it have? **Red leather** / **Brown leather**.
- What kind of music do you listen to in your car? **Classical** / **Elvis**.
- Who would you like to take in your car? **My friends** / **George Clooney**.
- Where would you like to go? **Along the coast** / **Down Fifth Avenue in New York**.

- 2 You are going to tell your partner about your dream car.

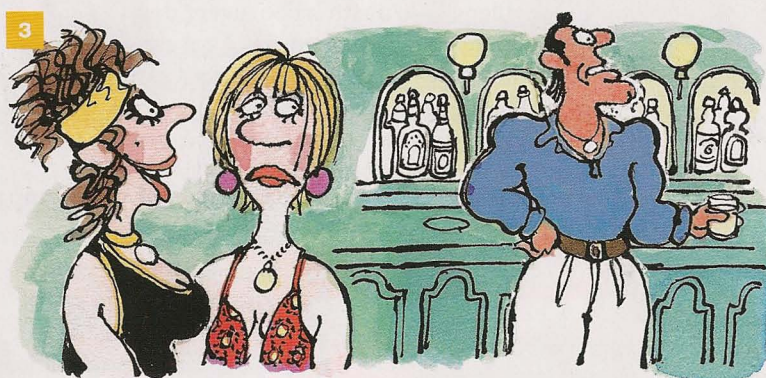
- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about your dream car.



Useful phrases

1 Read and match the conversations (a–c) with the pictures (1–3).

- a) A: Hey, what do you think of the guy over there with a blue shirt on?
B: Um – he's OK, but he's not my cup of soup / tea / hot chocolate.
A: Good – he's mine.
- b) A: No, I can't. It's too difficult.
B: No, it isn't. It's a piece of toast / pizza / cake. Come on.
A: No, no. Help! I'm going to fall over.
- c) A: What was it like?
B: Awful – it was so crowded. We were packed in like grapes / sardines / garlic.
A: Oh, no. I guess you won't go there again, then.



2 Underline the correct alternative to complete the highlighted useful phrases.

3.21 Listen to the conversations and check your answers.

Do you have any idioms like these in your language?

3 Replace the underlined phrases with the useful phrases from the conversations.

- a) I think that learning English is really easy.
b) I hate places where you are with lots of other people.
c) Going clubbing is not something I enjoy.

3.22 Listen, check, and repeat the sentences.

Are the sentences true or false for you? Compare with a partner.

Vocabulary Extra

Cars

- 1 Match the pictures with the parts of a car.

- ☐ 5 bumper
- ☐ emergency brake
- ☐ headlights
- ☐ hood
- ☐ license plate
- ☐ seat
- ☐ seat belt
- ☐ steering wheel
- ☐ stick shift
- ☐ sunroof
- ☐ tire
- ☐ trunk
- ☐ wheel
- ☐ windshield
- ☐ windshield wipers

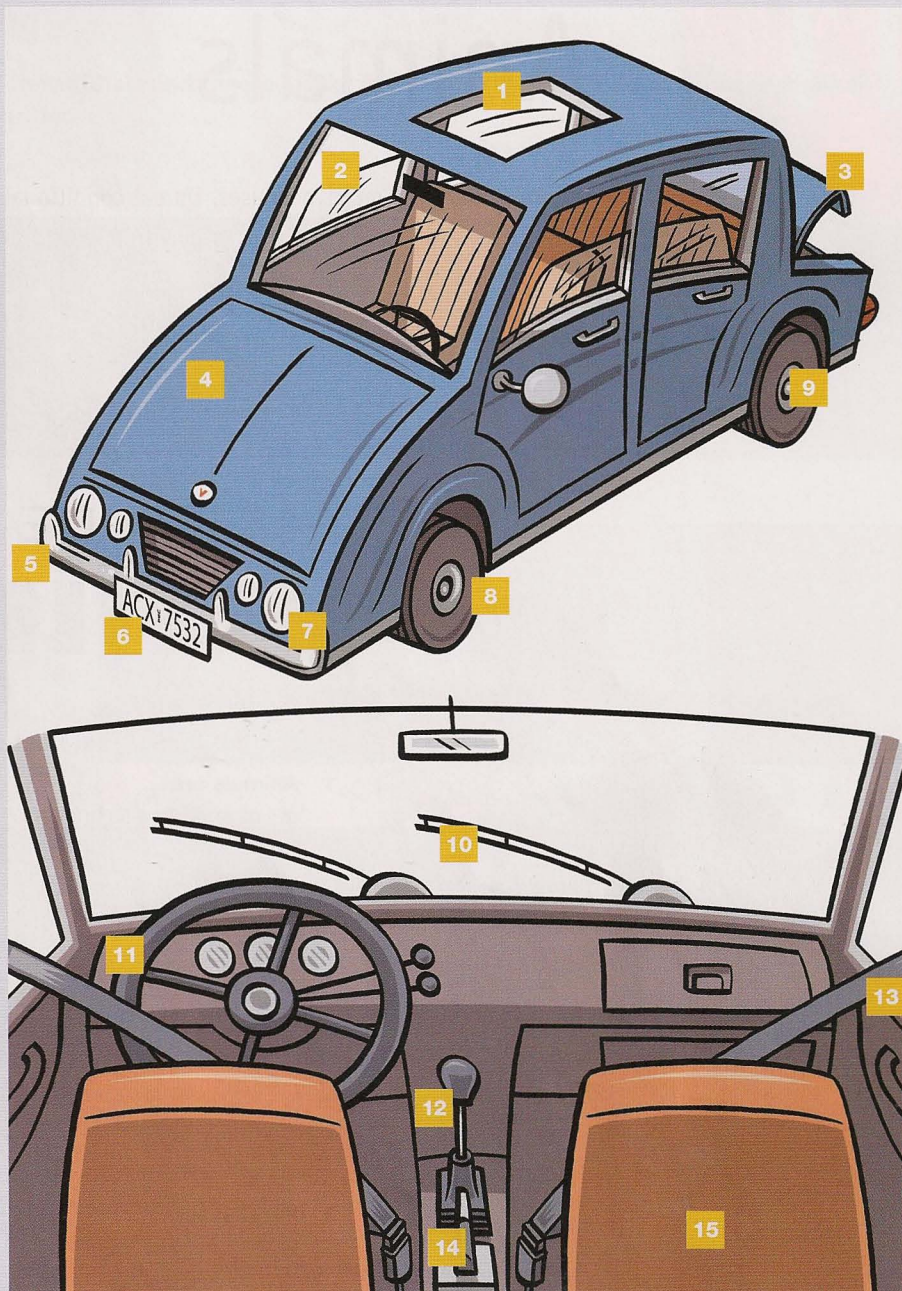
- 2 Work with a partner. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions.

What's this?

It's the stick shift.

What are these?

They're headlights.



Focus on words used with driving

- 1 Match the two sentence halves to complete the definitions of the words and expressions in bold.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a) If you give somebody a ride , | 1 when most people are going to or from work. |
| b) If you get stuck in a traffic jam , | 2 you take them somewhere in your car. |
| c) The rush hour is the period of the day | 3 you speed up and go past them. |
| d) If you run out of gas , | 4 it stops working and you can't use it. |
| e) If you pass somebody, | 5 you can't drive because there is too much traffic. |
| f) If your car breaks down , | 6 you have no more gas, and the car slows down and stops. |

- 2 Complete the questions with the words in the box.

down gas hour jams ~~passing~~ ride

- | | |
|---|---|
| a) Do you drive fast and enjoy <i>passing</i> other cars? | d) Do you always go to work/school in the rush _____? |
| b) Has your car ever broken _____? | e) Are there a lot of traffic _____ in your city? |
| c) When was the last time you ran out of _____? | f) Have you ever given a _____ to a hitchhiker? |

Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

Animals

Grammar Defining relative clauses. Unreal conditionals

Vocabulary Animals. Adjective + preposition. *that*

Useful phrases Polite requests

Reading & Speaking

- 1 How do you feel about animals? Do the questionnaire.



YOUR ATTITUDE TO animals

Check the option that best describes your attitude to animals.

1 Animals are ...

- a) as important as humans.
- b) less important than humans.
- c) more important than humans.

2 Animals ...

- a) should be respected and protected.
- b) are useful for humans.
- c) are good friends for humans.

3 Hunting is ...

- a) a popular activity in my country, but I don't like it.
- b) a great sport.
- c) very cruel.

4 Zoos are ...

- a) important for protecting endangered species.
- b) fun to visit.
- c) depressing and unnatural.

5 Animal testing ...

- a) is OK if there is no pain or suffering involved.
- b) is essential for progress in the medical field.
- c) is wrong. It should be illegal.

6 Sharks are ...

- a) dangerous and scary.
- b) exciting in movies.
- c) misunderstood.

7 Rabbits ...

- a) cause accidents on the road.
- b) are best in a red wine sauce.
- c) are fluffy and nice.

8 Fur is ...

- a) too expensive and not necessary.
- b) fashionable and fabulous.
- c) only for animals – not for humans.



2 Work in small groups. Discuss your opinions.

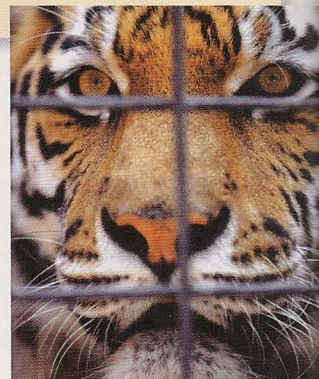
I think zoos are fun to visit.

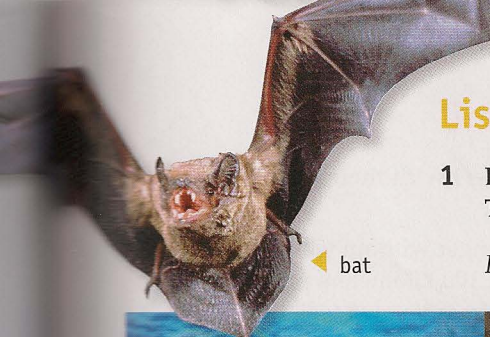
I disagree. I think they're depressing and unnatural.

3 Which discussion was the most interesting? Tell the class.

The discussion about number four was the most interesting.

Javier and Cristina think zoos are fun to visit, but I think they're depressing and unnatural.





Listening

- 1 Look at the animals and insects in the pictures. Which ones do you like or dislike? Tell a partner.

I hate bats.



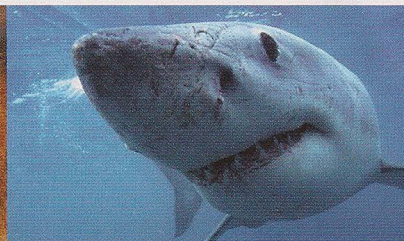
▲ dolphin



▲ bull



▲ lion



▲ shark



▲ crocodile



▲ spider



▲ rat



▲ mouse (mice)



▲ snake



▲ frog



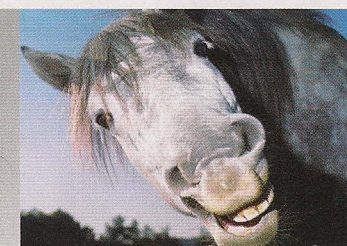
▲ eagle



▲ wasp



▲ cat



▲ horse

▼ dog



▲ Ricardo



▲ Alicia



▲ Hank

- 2 3.23 Listen to the interviews with Ricardo, Alicia, and Hank. Check (✓) the animals in Exercise 1 that they mention.

- 3 Listen again and underline the correct alternative.

- Ricardo is allergic to cats / dogs.
- Ricardo is interested in wild plants / wild birds.
- Alicia is crazy about horses / mice.
- Alicia is terrified of frogs / bats.
- Hank is fascinated by all insects / all animals.
- Hank is afraid of humans / wild animals.



Rewrite the sentences using names of people in the class. How many true sentences can you make? Ask questions to check.

"Are you allergic to cats?" "Yes, I am." "I was right!"

Vocabulary

- 1 Add the correct preposition. Then complete the sentences to make some true and some false statements about yourself.

- I've never been crazy *about* soccer.
- I'm not very interested ____.
- My parents are fascinated ____.
- When I was a child, I was afraid ____.
- I know several people who are allergic ____.
- I'm absolutely terrified ____.

- 2 Read your partner's statements from Exercise 1 and guess which statements are true and which are false.

Vocabulary

1 Test your knowledge of animals! Match the animals (a-f) with their defining characteristics (1-6).

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| a) An elephant | 1 is an animal that can last longer without water than a camel. |
| b) A dolphin | 2 is an animal that can run at 100 kilometers per hour. |
| c) A cheetah | 3 is an insect that can lift 50 times its own weight. |
| d) A giraffe | 4 is an animal that can smell water 15 kilometers away. |
| e) An ant | 5 is an animal that can live to be 200 years old. |
| f) A tortoise | 6 is an animal that can recognize its own image in a mirror. |

2 Work in small groups. You have three minutes. Try to list an animal or an insect for each letter of the alphabet.

A: ant B: bird C: cheetah D: dog E: ...

Reading & Vocabulary

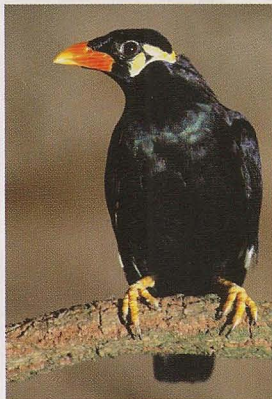
1 Look at the pictures. Which animal do you think goes best with each description (a-c)?

- An animal that knew when its owner was coming home.
- An animal that loved classical music.
- An animal that accidentally deleted some valuable files on a computer.

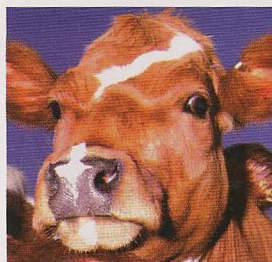
3.24 Read the stories and check your ideas.



▲ a Siamese cat



▲ a mynah bird



▲ a cow

Story 1

Mr. and Mrs. Gomez live near Mexico City with their son, Ramiro, and a mynah bird named Sylvio. Ramiro often goes away on business and he is sometimes away for weeks or even months. He hardly ever gets in touch with his parents to tell them when he is coming home. But he doesn't need to. Mr. and Mrs. Gomez always know when their son is going to turn up, because Sylvio starts calling "Rami" a few hours before Ramiro walks through the door.

Story 2

Ralph, a bank worker in San Francisco, owned a Siamese cat named Morris. One morning, Morris was sick, and so Ralph decided to take him into work to keep an eye on him. While Ralph was speaking on the telephone, Morris got up, walked across the keyboard of his computer, and accidentally keyed in a secret code that deleted files worth \$100,000. As you can imagine, Ralph's employers were not amused.

Story 3

Pat and Tina were touring New England by car when they decided to pull up in a quiet place to have a picnic. While they were eating, they played some Mozart on their CD player. After a few minutes, they looked up and realized that they were surrounded by cows, who were listening to the music. When the Mozart was finished, they put on a rock CD. The cows immediately turned around and walked off.

2 Read the stories again. Are these sentences true or false?

- Ramiro often travels away from home on business.
- He always contacts his parents when he's coming home.
- Mr. and Mrs. Gomez never know when Ramiro is going to arrive.
- Ralph took Morris to work to take care of him.
- Morris typed a secret code because he wanted to delete the files.
- Pat and Tina decided to stop the car in a quiet place because they wanted to sleep.
- The cows turned around and left when Pat and Tina put on a rock CD.

3 Replace the underlined words and expressions in Exercise 2 with words and expressions from the stories.

travels away from home = *goes away*

Which story do you like best? Do you know any other stories about animals?
Tell a partner.

Grammar

Defining relative clauses

I know a woman. She's two meters tall.

I know a woman **who's / that's two meters tall.**

We live in an apartment.

It's too small for us.

We live in an apartment **which is / that's too small for us.**

Use *who* for people.

Use *which* for things.

Use *that* for things and people.

1 Two sentences can combine to make one sentence using a relative pronoun. In each new sentence, cross out the relative pronoun which is *not* possible.

- a) A vet is a person. He/She treats sick animals.
A vet is a person **that / which / who** treats sick animals.
- b) A horse is an animal. It sleeps standing up.
A horse is an animal **that / which / who** sleeps standing up.

Complete the rules with *that*, *which*, and *who*.

You use (1) _____ for people. You use (2) _____ for things.

You can use (3) _____ for people or things.

2 Use *that* to combine these sentences.

- a) I've got a dog. It likes going for long walks. *I've got a dog that likes going for long walks.*
- b) I've got a car. It isn't very easy to park.
- c) I've got a sister. She works in a store.
- d) I've got an espresso machine. It makes great coffee.
- e) I've got a friend. He lives in Panama.
- f) I've got some shoes. They are too small for me.

Replace *that* with *which* or *who* in your sentences a–f. Which sentences are true for you?

3 Correct these ungrammatical definitions by crossing out the unnecessary word.

- a) a person who ~~she~~ treats sick animals
- b) the only animal – apart from humans – which it gets sunburn
- c) a word to describe people who they are afraid of spiders
- d) a person who he studies birds
- e) the scientist who he developed the theory of evolution
- f) the largest animal that it has ever lived

Match these words (1–6) with the definitions above.

- 1 arachnophobic c
- 2 an ornithologist
- 3 a vet
- 4 Charles Darwin
- 5 a pig
- 6 a blue whale



4 Pairwork Student A: page 120 **Student B:** page 125

5 Grammar Extra 11, Part 1 page 146. Read the explanation and do the exercises.

Pronunciation

- 1 3.25 Listen and repeat the word pairs (a–d). What do you notice about the pronunciation of each pair?

Words	Meanings
a) bare/bear	1 ... Sir or Madam / a brown animal with long legs (e.g. Bambi)
b) dear/deer	2 a Christmas tree / hair that covers some animals
c) fir/fur	3 empty or undressed / a large animal with thick fur (e.g. a panda)
d) tail/tale	4 a cat has a long one / an imaginative story

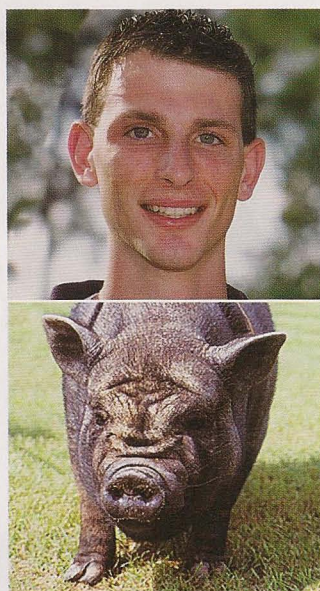
- 2 Match the words (a–d) with their meanings (1–4). In your language, do you have words that sound the same but have different spellings and different meanings?

Listening

- 1 3.26 Listen to Tim, Gus, and Maxine talking about their pets. Which questions does the interviewer ask?

- a) Can you describe your pet? d) Who takes care of him/her when you go away?
 b) What does he/she eat? e) Do you and your pet look alike?
 c) Is he/she a good companion? f) If you were an animal, what would you like to be?

▼ Tim, 24



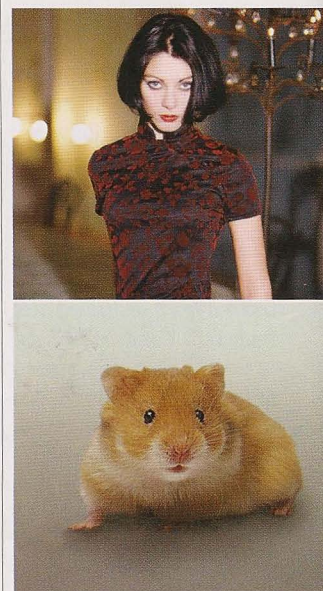
▲ Harriet, the pig

▼ Gus, 12



▲ Hendrix, the spider

▼ Maxine, 32



▲ Page, the hamster

- 2 Check (✓) the characteristics that you think Tim, Gus, and Maxine mentioned to describe their pets.

- a) He/She's a good companion. ✓
 b) He/She listens to my problems.
 c) He/She makes me laugh.
 d) He/She scares people away.
 e) He/She keeps me in shape because we go out for walks.
 f) He/She looks cool.
 g) He/She enjoys doing the same things as me.
 h) He/She gives me unconditional love.

Listen to the interviews again and check your answers.

- 3 Which of the characteristics in Exercise 2 would you look for in a pet? Which of these characteristics would you look for in a person? Discuss with a partner.

Grammar

Unreal conditionals

If I **were** an animal,
I'd **be** a tiger.

He'd **stop** working
if he **won** the lottery.



Yasmina would like to be a tiger.

- 1 Look at this question from the interview on page 100. Answer the questions.

if-clause	Main clause
<i>if + past tense</i> If you <i>were</i> an animal,	<i>would + infinitive</i> what <i>would</i> you <i>like</i> to be?

- Is the question about a real situation or an imaginary situation?
- Is the question about now or the past?
- What tense is used in the *if*-clause?

Replace the word *animal* in the table above with the words in the box and/or your own ideas. Ask your partner the questions.

a car a color a famous person a fictional character a month

- 2 Complete the *Imaginary situation* column with conditional sentences so that they are true for you. Compare your sentences with your partner.

Real situation	Imaginary situation
a) I'm not a man/woman.	→ If I <i>were</i> a man/woman, I'd / I wouldn't ____.
b) I don't have \$1 million.	→ If ____, I'd / I wouldn't ____.
c) I don't speak English fluently.	→ If ____, I'd / I wouldn't ____.
d) I can't fly a plane.	→ If ____, I'd / I wouldn't ____.

- 3 Complete these "moral dilemmas" with the correct verb form.

- If you (find) ____ a wallet in the street with \$20, would you give the wallet to the police, but keep the cash?
- If you saw your best friend's partner kissing someone else, (you tell) ____ your best friend?
- If a sales clerk (give) ____ you too much change, would you keep the money?
- If a friend left their bag at your house, (you look) ____ through it?

Work in small groups. Discuss your answers to each "moral dilemma." What other "moral dilemmas" can you think of?

- 4 Grammar Extra 11, Part 2 page 146. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

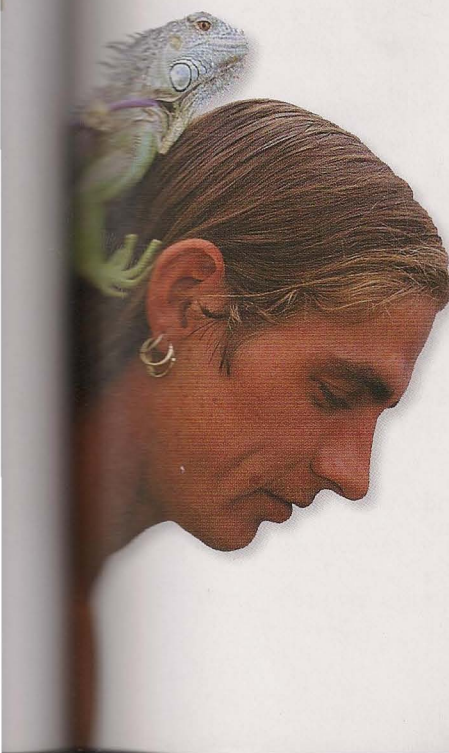
Speaking: anecdote

- 1 3.27 Listen to Mandy talking about her friend's pet. Underline the correct information.

- What kind of animal is it? An iguana / alligator.
- Who is its owner? Angus / Anton.
- What's its name? Indiana / Iggy.
- How old is it? About five / fifteen.
- What does it look like? It's green and almost a meter long / gray and very small.
- Where does it sleep? At the top of a closet / the drapes.
- What does it eat? Meat / Vegetables.
- How does it get exercise? It goes for walks in the park / runs around in the backyard.

- 2 You are going to tell your partner about your pet / a pet you know.

- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
- Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
- Tell your partner about the pet.



Useful phrases

- 1 3.28 Read and listen to four telephone conversations.
Who's going to take care of Mona this weekend?

a)

Sarah: Hi, Mom!
Mom: Hello, Sarah.
Sarah: Could you take care of Mona this weekend?
Mom: Sorry, I can't. We're going to Las Vegas this weekend.
Sarah: OK, never mind.

b)

Sarah: Hi, Aunt Wanda.
Aunt W: Hello, Sarah. What can I do for you?
Sarah: I'm going away for the weekend. Would you mind taking care of Mona for me?
Aunt W: Oh, I'm afraid I can't. I'm, er, busy this weekend.
Sarah: OK, don't worry. See you soon.

c)

Rod: Hi, Sarah. How are you?
Sarah: Fine, thanks, but I've got a little problem.
Rod: Oh, what's the matter?
Sarah: Nothing serious, but do you think you could take care of Mona this weekend?
Rod: Mona? Oh, I'd really like to help, but I'm afraid I can't. I'm working this weekend.
Sarah: OK, no problem.

d)

Sarah: Hello, Mrs. Harvey. It's Sarah.
Mrs. H: Hello, Sarah. How are you?
Sarah: Fine, thank you. How are you?
Mrs. H: Oh, not too bad, dear.
Sarah: Mrs. Harvey, I'm going away this weekend and I was wondering if you could take care of Mona for me.
Mrs. H: Mona? Oh, yes, that's no problem at all.
Sarah: That's wonderful!
Mrs. H: Can I take her out of her cage?



- 2 Read the conversations again and complete the table.

Ask a favor	Accept/Refuse	Respond
a) (1) <i>Could you take care of Mona?</i>	Sorry, I can't.	Never mind.
b) Would you mind <i>taking care of Mona?</i>	(2) _____	OK, don't worry.
c) (3) _____	(4) _____	OK, no problem.
d) I was wondering if you could <i>take care of Mona.</i>	(5) _____	(6) _____

- 3.29 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

- 3 Notice the number of words in the useful phrases in Exercise 2. Complete this sentence with the correct alternative.

If you want to be formal or more polite, you usually use **more** / **fewer** words.

- 4 Work with a partner. Choose one of the situations below and write a conversation using some of the useful phrases.

- You want someone to write a job reference for you.
- You want someone to help you buy a new outfit for a friend's wedding.
- You want someone to lend you their car.

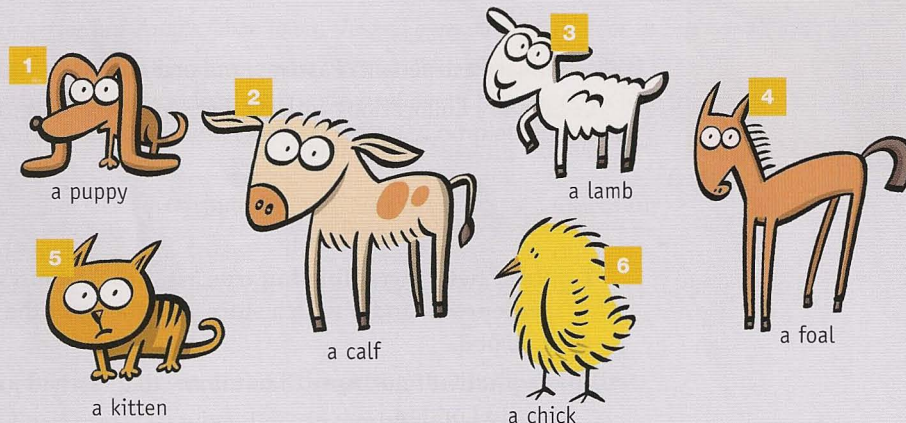
Practice your conversation.

Vocabulary Extra

Animals

- 1 Match the pictures and names of the baby animals with the adult animals.

- ☐ 5 a kitten: a cat
☐ _____ : a cow
☐ _____ : a dog
☐ _____ : a hen
☐ _____ : a horse
☐ _____ : a sheep



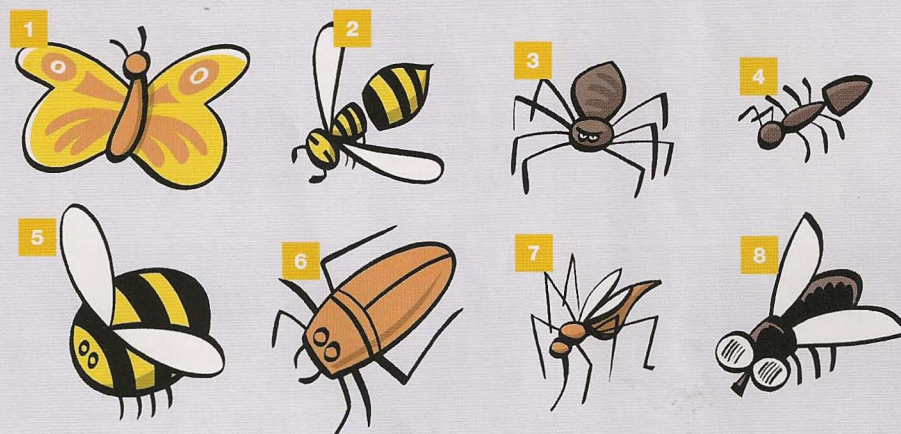
- 2 Work with a partner. Cover the words and pictures. Ask and answer questions.

What do you call a baby dog? A puppy.

Insects

- 1 Match the pictures with the common insects.

- ☐ 4 an ant
☐ _____ a bee
☐ _____ a butterfly
☐ _____ a cockroach
☐ _____ a fly
☐ _____ a mosquito
☐ _____ a spider
☐ _____ a wasp



- 2 Work with your partner. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions.

What's this? It's a bee.

Focus on *that*

- 1 Complete the table with the examples in the box

Look at that car. It's going too fast. That's all right. The woman that called me spoke French.
~~What's that strange noise?~~ Where are the pictures that were on my desk? Yes, that's right.

Some uses of <i>that</i>	Examples
a) <i>that</i> (+ noun) to refer to a person or thing NOT near you	Who's that girl? I don't know. I've never seen her before. (1) <i>What's that strange noise?</i> (2) _____
b) <i>that</i> = relative pronoun	It's an insect that makes honey. (3) _____ (4) _____
c) Expressions with <i>that</i>	Hi. This is Jo. Is that Tanya? (5) "You're Chilean, aren't you?" "_____" (6) "I forgot my homework." "_____. Bring it tomorrow."

- 2 Write your own example sentences for each use of *that*.

Grammar Past perfect. Passives. *will* and *might* for future possibility

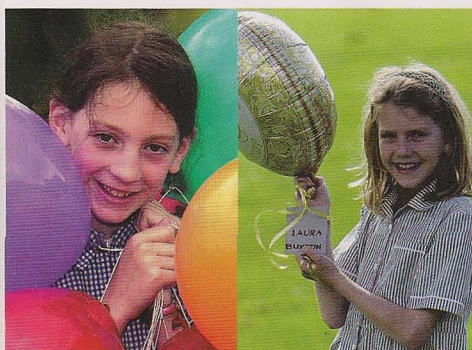
Vocabulary Collocations with *do*, *get*, *go*, *have*, *make*, and *take*. The weather

Useful phrases Exclaiming

Reading

1 Read two “incredible but true” stories. In both stories, a sentence is missing. Match sentences *a* and *b* with a story, and then put the sentence in the appropriate position: 1, 2, or 3.

- At that time, Amy didn’t know that Ian had just started his journey from Sydney to London.
- It was a reply from another Laura Buxton, who had found the balloon in her backyard 225 kilometers away.



A Two Lauras

Laura Buxton was celebrating her grandparents’ golden wedding anniversary when she had an idea. **1** She decided to release a gold and white helium-filled balloon with her name and address and a note attached. In the note, she asked the person who found the balloon to write back. Ten days later, a letter arrived at her home. **2** Both Lauras were aged ten and both had a three-year-old black labrador, a guinea pig, and a rabbit. **3** “I talked to Laura on the telephone,” said the first Laura. “I hope we can become best friends, because we have lots in common. We’ve made plans to meet up.”



B Worlds apart

Amy Dolby took her seat on the flight from London to Sydney, Australia. She was going to Australia to surprise her boyfriend, Ian Johnstone. **1** He wanted to propose to Amy on July 1, because this was the fifth anniversary of their relationship. **2** They both stopped in Singapore to wait for connecting flights, but they didn’t know that they were sitting a few meters away from one another. **3** When Ian arrived in Amy’s home town, she had been outside his door in Sydney all afternoon. When they found out what had happened, Ian proposed over the telephone, and Amy accepted.

3.30 Listen and check your answers.

2 Are the following statements true or false?

- Laura Buxton attached her name and address to a balloon. *True*
- The two Lauras had never met before.
- They had nothing in common.
- Amy and Ian had been together for two years.
- They met when they stopped in Singapore for connecting flights.
- Ian asked Amy to marry him on the telephone.

3 **Pairwork** Student A: page 120 Student B: page 125

4 Work in small groups. Discuss the questions.

- Have you ever read or heard about “incredible but true” stories like the stories in Exercise 1?
- Do you know any people (couples, friends, co-workers) who have met in a strange way?
- Have any strange coincidences ever happened to you?

Grammar

Past perfect

I
You
He
She 'd (had) worked
It
We
They

Had you worked?

Yes, I had.

No, I hadn't.

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at this sentence from one of the stories on page 104 and discuss the questions.

When Ian arrived in Amy's home town, she had been outside his door in Sydney all afternoon.

- Which verb is in the simple past? Which is in the past perfect?
- Which tense shows clearly that one past event happened before the other past event?
- How do you form these two past tenses? Complete the table.

	Affirmative	Negative	Question
Simple past	He arrived	(1) _____	(2) _____?
Past perfect	She had been	(3) _____	(4) _____?

- 2 In each sentence pair, underline the action that happened first.

- I had breakfast when I got to work this morning.
 - I'd had breakfast when I got to work this morning.
- When I got home yesterday, my mom made dinner.
 - When I got home yesterday, my mom had made dinner.
- When I started learning English, I'd been to the USA several times.
 - When I started learning English, I went to the USA several times.
- This lesson started when I arrived.
 - This lesson had started when I arrived.

You can use *already* in a past perfect sentence to make it clearer which action happened first. Rewrite the past perfect sentences above with *already*.

- I'd already had breakfast when I got to work this morning.*

Are any of the sentences true for you?

- 3 Think about times that you have felt some of the emotions below. Remember what had happened to make you feel that way.

When was the last time you	felt / were	completely relaxed / a little depressed / embarrassed really scared / very angry sick / sad / really tired / worried	?	What had happened? What had you done?
----------------------------	-------------	---	---	--

Tell your partner.

The last time I felt really tired was on Saturday. I'd been out till 3:00 a.m. ...

- 4 Grammar Extra 12, Part 1 page 148. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Vocabulary

- 1 Underline the collocations with *have*, *make*, and *take* in the stories on page 104. Then complete these statements with collocations from the box.

have a good time ~~have dinner~~ make a promise make money take pictures

- I *have dinner* at eight o'clock every night.
- The press shouldn't _____ of famous people without their permission.
- The only reason to get a job is to _____.
- You should never _____ if you can't keep it.
- We always _____ when we visit our friends in New York.

- 2 Work with your partner. Decide if you agree or disagree with the statements.



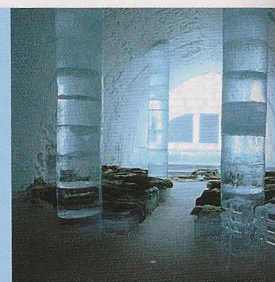
Reading

- 1 You are going to read an article about a special hotel in Sweden. Match the figures in column A with the probable meanings in column B.

A	B
40,000	= The year the first hotel was built.
1990	= The temperature inside the hotel.
64	= The number of tons of ice and snow used to build the hotel.
14,000	= The temperature outside the hotel.
-30	= The number of rooms in the hotel.
-5	= The number of hotel guests last year.

Read the article and check your answers.

THE COOLEST HOTEL IN THE WORLD



Can you imagine a hotel that is entirely made of ice? Well, it exists in Sweden, but only in winter. In spring, the hotel melts away and disappears into the river.

5 The Ice Hotel is situated on the shores of the Torne River in the old village of Jukkasjarvi, Sweden.

Every winter, work starts on building a new Ice Hotel, involving 40,000 tons of ice and snow. 10,000 tons of ice are taken from the Torne River, and

10 30,000 tons of snow are provided by Mother Nature.

The first Ice Hotel was built in 1990. It started as a single room – now it has 64 rooms, as well as an ice chapel, an art gallery, a movie theater, a theater, and an Absolut Ice Bar. Last winter, more than

15 14,000 guests spent the night at the Ice Hotel.

Outside, the temperature is -30°C , but inside the hotel, the temperature is always around -5°C . All the furniture is made of ice, including the beds, but nobody gets cold. The beds are covered with reindeer skins and guests are given warm clothes and special Arctic sleeping bags.

In the Absolut Ice Bar, the drinks are served in glasses made of ice, so there is no need for ice cubes!

25 Every year, the interior of the hotel is designed by different artists from all over the world. It is described by visitors as "absolutely stunning," "one of the most beautiful places I've ever seen," and "unique."



- 2 Work with a partner. Answer the questions about the Ice Hotel.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) Where is it situated? | d) What are the beds covered with? |
| b) What is it built of? | e) Who is the interior designed by? |
| c) What is the furniture made of? | f) How is it described by visitors? |

What's the best or worst hotel you've ever stayed in? Tell your partner.

Grammar

Passives

English **is spoken** here.
Rome **wasn't built** in a day.

Were these toys **made**
in China?

Yes, they **were**.

No, they **weren't**.

- 1 Look at the table and decide if the statements (a–c) are true or false.

Active				Passive			
subject	verb	object		subject	verb		
Somebody	built	the first Ice Hotel	in 1990.	The first Ice Hotel	was built	in 1990.	
subject	verb	object		subject	verb		
Somebody	takes	ice	from the Torne River.	Ice	is taken	from the Torne River.	

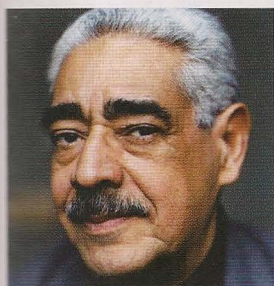
- a) The object of an active sentence becomes the subject of a passive sentence.
b) You make the passive with the correct form of *be* (*is, was, etc.*) + a past participle (*made, used, etc.*).
c) You can use passive verb structures to talk about actions when it doesn't matter (or you don't know) who performed them.
- 2 Complete the questions and answers.
- a) Was your house built before 1980? Yes, it *was*. No, it *wasn't*.
b) Were your shoes designed in Italy? Yes, they _____. No, they _____.
c) Is your salary paid by check? Yes, _____. No, _____.
d) _____ you invited to any parties last week? _____.
e) _____ your name spelled the same in English? _____.
f) _____ your cell phone made in Japan? _____.

3.31 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 2.

- 4 Grammar Extra 12, Part 2 page 148. Read the explanations and do the exercises.

Speaking: anecdote



- 1 3.32 Listen to Curro talking about the most incredible building he's ever seen. Underline the correct information.
- a) What is the most incredible building you've ever seen? The Colosseum / Alhambra.
b) Where is it? In the South of Spain / Rome.
c) When did you first see this building? When I was eighteen / Two years ago.
d) When was it built? In the 13th or 14th century / Five years ago.
e) Can you describe it? The style is Moorish / It's a modern building.
f) What is so incredible about it? The location / interior design.
g) How many times have you been there? Only once / Four times.
- 2 You are going to tell your partner about the most incredible building you've ever seen.
- Ask yourself the questions in Exercise 1.
 - Think about *what* to say and *how* to say it.
 - Tell your partner about the most incredible building you've ever seen.



1 Complete the table with the appropriate words.

The North Pole in winter

 3.33 Listen and check your answers.

Grammar

It'll definitely be dry.
I think it'll be sunny.
It **might** be cloudy.
I don't think it'll rain.
It definitely **won't** freeze.

(won't = will not)

- a) The south definitely have better weather than the north. (will)
The south will definitely have better weather than the north.
- b) Tomorrow probably be warmer than today. (will)
- c) I think we have a lot of snow next winter. (will)
- d) It rain later today. (might)
- e) I don't think there be any storms tomorrow. (will)
- f) It probably be so sunny tomorrow. (won't)
- g) It definitely freeze tomorrow. (won't)

will happen
✓✓✓✓✓
✓✓✓
✓
might happen
x
xxx
xxxxx
won't happen

Rewrite the sentences so they are true for where you live. Compare with your partner.

2 Work with your partner. Use words and phrases in the box to complete the predictions (a–f) about people in the class.

definitely I don't think I think might probably will won't

- a) _____ retire by the age of sixty.
Ricardo will probably retire by the age of sixty.
- b) _____ live and work in a foreign country.
I don't think Rosa will live and work in a foreign country.
- c) _____ set up and run a company.
- d) _____ travel around the world.
- e) _____ write a famous song.
- f) _____ have five or more children.

Read out your predictions and see if people agree or disagree with you.

Reading & Speaking

- 1 Work with a partner. Read the instructions, consult *The Oracle*, and find out about your future!



The Oracle

You'll need some dice!

Instructions

- Choose a question (A–F) you want to ask.
- Take turns rolling the dice with the question in your mind.
- Find the letter corresponding to your question and the number you rolled on the dice. Find your answer where they meet. For example: you asked question D (*How many children will I have?*) and you rolled 4, so *The Oracle* says "One of each."

Questions

- A: What will the love of my life look like?
 B: Will I be famous one day?
 C: Will I travel the world?
 D: How many children will I have?
 E: Where will I be happiest?
 F: What will I look like in ten years?

	1	2	3	4	5	6
A	Not as you expect.	Gorgeous.	Not classically good-looking, but you'll never look at anybody else.	In great shape.	He/She will have wonderful eyes.	He/She'll look like you.
B	No, you won't.	No, but you'll meet someone famous.	You'll be well known in your profession.	You'll be in the news for doing something crazy.	You'll have your fifteen minutes of fame.	Yes, but you'll have to work very hard.
C	Yes, for pleasure.	Yes, for your job.	No, but you'll travel in your own country.	No, but you'll meet people from all over the world.	You'll have wonderful vacations abroad.	You'll travel when you're older.
D	More than you expect.	The same as your parents.	Your career will be more important.	One of each.	You'll have a big family.	Enough.
E	At home in bed.	In the mountains.	Abroad.	Near the ocean.	Everywhere.	In a big city.
F	Completely different.	Like your mother.	Fabulous.	Younger than you are.	No different.	Like your father.

How likely/unlikely do you think the predictions from *The Oracle* are?

- 2 Think about the topics in the box below and use the sentence beginnings to write about your life in the future. Discuss your ideas with your partner.

children English family free time hair health and fitness house
 job money possessions relationships travel

I hope I'll ... / I hope I won't ... I'll definitely ... / I definitely won't ...
 I'll probably... / I probably won't ... I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ...

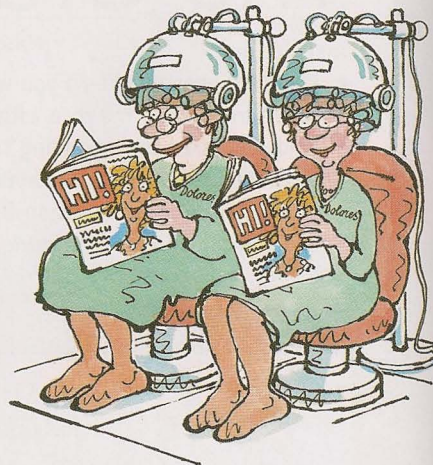
Useful phrases

- 1 3.34 Listen to the conversation between Alma and Betty and underline the topics in the box that they talk about.

celebrities children clothes cooking houses politics travel weddings

- 2 Complete the conversation with *very* or *absolutely*.

- A: Oh, look at that dress.
 B: It's (1) *very* pretty, isn't it?
 A: It's (2) *absolutely* gorgeous!
 B: It costs \$7,500.
 A: What? That's (3) _____ expensive.
 B: I know. It's (4) _____ ridiculous! ... Oh, is that George Clooney?
 A: Yes. Oh, my gosh! He looks (5) _____ tired.
 B: Tired? He looks (6) _____ exhausted!
 A: And look at his suit. It's not (7) _____ nice.
 B: It's (8) _____ awful! What's happened to him?
 A: I don't know. ... Oh, that house is beautiful.
 B: It's (9) _____ big.
 A: It's (10) _____ enormous! Who does it belong to?
 B: Er ... Cristiano Ronaldo.
 A: Who's he?
 B: I've no idea. ... Ahh. Look at the little girl. She's (11) _____ cute.
 A: She's (12) _____ adorable! Who are her parents?
 B: Angelina Jolie and Brad Pitt.
 A: That's (13) _____ strange. She doesn't look anything like them.
 B: I know! It's (14) _____ incredible!



Listen again and check your answers.

- 3 3.35 Listen and repeat the useful phrases. Notice and practice the intonation.

- It's very pretty. It's absolutely gorgeous!
- That's very expensive. It's absolutely ridiculous!
- He looks very tired. He looks absolutely exhausted!
- It's not very nice. It's absolutely awful!
- It's very big. It's absolutely enormous!
- She's very cute. She's absolutely adorable!
- That's very strange. It's absolutely incredible!

- 4 Work with a partner. Complete the table with the appropriate adjectives from the box.

delicious funny good impossible

With <i>very</i>	difficult	(2) _____	(3) _____	tasty
With <i>absolutely</i>	(1) <i>impossible</i>	hilarious	wonderful	(4) _____

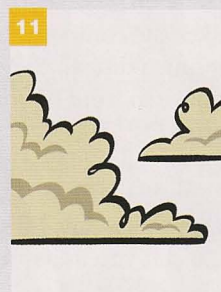
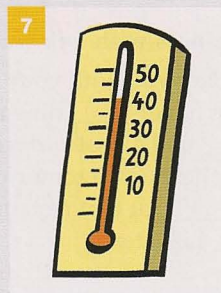
- 5 Imagine Alma and Betty are looking at a different page in their magazines. Continue their conversation using the adjectives in Exercises 3 and 4 or your own ideas. Practice the conversation.

Vocabulary Extra

Weather

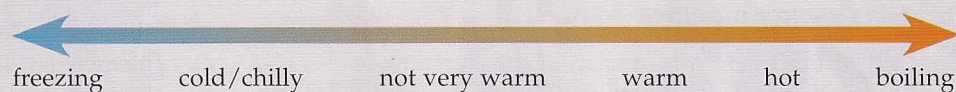
1 Match the pictures with the words.

	Noun	Adjective
☐ 9	breeze	breezy
☐	cloud	_____
☐	_____	drizzly
☐	fog	_____
☐	_____	hot
☐	humidity	_____
☐	_____	icy
☐	_____	misty
☐	rain	_____
☐	_____	stormy
☐	sun	_____
☐	_____	windy



2 Complete the *Noun* and *Adjective* columns.

3 Look at the different ways of saying how hot or cold it is. Write a temperature in °C to show what each term means to you.



boiling = over 30°C

Compare your ideas with a partner.

Focus on *do, get, go, have, make, take*

1 Complete the collocation tables with the verbs in the box.

do	~~get~~	go	have	make	take
----	----------------	----	------	------	------

a) *get*
better
changed
dressed
lost
married

b) _____
a good time
dinner
fun
an idea
lunch

c) _____
a bus
a picture
an exam
responsibility
risks

d) _____
a decision
a living
a promise
mistakes
money

e) _____
research
some homework
the dishes
the housework
the shopping

f) _____
crazy
for a drink
for a walk
home
skiing

2 Look in your dictionary. Find another collocation for each verb.

Review D

► Grammar Extra pages 144–149

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with *will* (future).

- Jim (help) *will help* you with your work.
- The doctor (not have) _____ time to see you today.
- We (send) _____ you a postcard from New York.
- (Sara be) _____ here again tomorrow?
- They (not eat) _____ at that restaurant again.
- (you see) _____ Liz later?

2 Underline the correct conjunctions.

- If / **When** he likes the company, he'll take the job.
- If / **When** they finish dinner, they'll go home.
- You'll see our house in front of you **as soon as** / if you turn the corner.
- If / **When** you go to bed, please put the cat outside.
- As soon as** / If it rains today, I'll stay inside.
- Don't worry – I'll call you **as soon as** / if I get home.

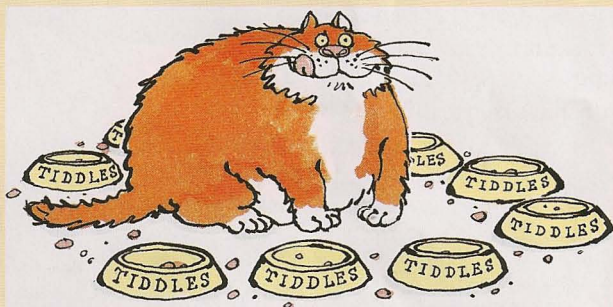
3 Where possible, replace the simple past with *used to* / *didn't use to* + infinitive.

When I was a child ...

- I lived in an apartment. *I used to live in an apartment.*
- I broke my arm.
- I didn't have a bicycle.
- I won a dance competition.
- my family didn't watch TV.
- I didn't like classical music.

Write down three things you used to do. Make one of them false. Can your partner guess which one is false?

4 Use *who* or *which* to combine the sentences.



- She has a cat. It never stops eating.
She has a cat which never stops eating.
- I have a friend. She lives in Peru.
- I have a new cellphone. It takes good pictures.
- Where are the eggs? They were in the refrigerator.
- Those are the people. They bought my old house.
- She has a boyfriend. He's a doctor.

5 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs.

- A: What (1 you do) *would you do* if you (2 win) _____ \$10 million?
- B: I think I (3 buy) _____ a new car and a new house. What about you?
- A: If I (4 win) _____ \$10 million, I (5 get) _____ a car too, but I (6 not buy) _____ a new house. I like our house now.
- B: (7 you give) _____ any money to me?
- A: Maybe. Why?
- B: Because if I (8 have) _____ any money, I (9 give) _____ you half of it.
- A: Ahh. You're so nice.

6 Read the story and number the events (a–f) in order (1–6).

Yesterday, Mike had a bad day. He woke up late, and his wife had already gone to work. He got dressed and rushed to the train station, but when he got to the station, the train had left and he had missed it. He had an important meeting at 10:00. But when he got to work, the meeting had already started. His boss was really mad!

- Mike arrived at the train station.
- Mike's wife went to work. 1
- The meeting started.
- The train left the station.
- Mike woke up.
- Mike arrived at work.

7 Write questions in the past passive.

- your car / make / in Brazil ?
Was your car made in Brazil?
- your house / build / in the 20th century ?
- your shoes / make / in Argentina ?
- your jacket / design / by Armani ?
- watch / make / in Japan ?
- your computer / manufacture / in China ?

Answer the questions. Compare with your partner.

8 Find the mistake! Cross out the incorrect sentence.

- Did you use to visit the zoo?
 - ~~Did you used to visit the zoo?~~
- A teacher is a person who works in a school.
 - A teacher is a person which works in a school.
- If you would have a pet, what would it be?
 - If you had a pet, what would it be?
- When I got home, I had made lunch.
 - When I got home, I made lunch.
- This watch is make of gold.
 - This watch is made of gold.
- It might rain tomorrow.
 - It might to rain tomorrow.

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words and expressions in the box.

a brisk walk a good network a healthy life
extended family in a hurry in shape

- For a *healthy life*, I try to eat well and exercise often.
- I have a big _____.
- I always go for _____ after lunch.
- I should slow down. I'm always _____.
- It's important to have _____ of friends.
- I do martial arts to keep _____.

Check (✓) the statements that are true for you.
Compare with a partner.

- 2 Put the words in the box in three groups.

beans chicken coffee garlic lettuce
nuts onion orange peach sausage
shrimp soup tomato trout

Fruit and vegetables	Meat and fish	Other
		beans

- 3 Complete the words in the recipe.



Healthy roast potatoes

- Peel and wash the potatoes. Boil them for ten minutes.
- Chop some garlic and mix it with some olive oil.
- Put the olive oil and garlic in the bottom of a dish.
- Slice the potatoes and put them in the olive oil in the dish.
- Bake them in the oven for an hour and a half.

- 4 Underline the correct preposition.

- I'm terrified on / of snakes.
- I'm not really crazy about / of tennis.
- I'm not afraid of / by spiders, but I don't like them.
- I'm allergic of / to strawberries.
- I'm very interested in / of old French movies.

Check (✓) the statements that are true for you.
Compare with your partner.

- 5 Find sixteen animals in the box. Look → and ↓.

E	R	A	V	C	A	T	I	P	D
A	S	H	A	R	K	H	N	E	O
G	W	L	I	O	N	F	R	O	G
L	E	B	M	C	I	A	T	W	Z
E	X	R	D	O	L	P	H	I	N
H	W	A	Q	D	X	B	A	T	M
O	A	T	L	I	F	U	I	Y	O
R	S	J	F	L	P	L	D	E	U
S	P	I	D	E	R	L	U	N	S
E	O	G	Y	V	S	N	A	K	E

- 6 Complete the questions with *take* or *make*.

- Would you prefer to *make* money or have a job you love?
- Do you _____ risks, or are you careful?
- Do you ever _____ promises that you couldn't keep?
- Do you _____ great pictures?

Answer the questions. Compare with your partner.

- 7 Use the words in the box to complete five phrases beginning with *It's* and four phrases beginning with *I like*.

clouds rainy snow snowing storms
sunny the sun wet windy

- It's *rainy*, _____, _____, _____, _____.
- I like *clouds*, _____, _____, _____.

Pronunciation

- 1 Look at some words from Units 10–12. Say the words and add them to the table.

afraid animal arrive dangerous enjoy
fitness gardening healthy lettuce
politics promise rainy relax sardine
terrified

A: □□	B: □□	C: □□□
<u>f</u> itness	a <u>f</u> raid	<u>a</u> nimal

- 2 Underline the stressed syllable.

3.36 Listen, check, and repeat.

Reading & Listening

1 3.37 Read the article and match the animals (a–e) to the incredible journeys they make.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a) Albatross | 1 3,500 kilometers |
| b) Humpback whale | 2 40,000 kilometers |
| c) Monarch butterfly | 3 3,000 kilometers |
| d) Green turtle | 4 8,000 kilometers |
| e) Wildebeest | 5 2,000 kilometers |

THE TOP FIVE MOST

incredible animal journeys

Albatrosses spend 85% of their lives traveling. They can even sleep while they're flying. Most albatrosses fly around the world at least once a year and some do it several times. And what's even more incredible is that the 40,000-kilometer journey can take them as little as 46 days.



Humpback whales are experienced long-distance travelers. They spend the summer in the Arctic, where they eat a ton of food every

day. As soon as winter comes, they swim 8,000 kilometers to warmer waters in the Pacific Ocean near the Equator to give birth. They don't eat during the winter. There are now around 40,000 humpback whales in our oceans, but there used to be around 120,000.



Every fall, thousands of **Monarch butterflies** start their journey in the east of the United States and fly west for the warm

air of Mexico. Some can fly as far as 3,500 kilometers. They have to fly fast to finish their journey before winter. When spring comes, they leave Mexico and travel back east, where they lay their eggs and die.



Female **green turtles** return to their birthplace every two or three years to start a family. They swim 2,000

kilometers from their home in Brazilian waters to Ascension Island in the Atlantic Ocean. They lay between 100 and 200 eggs on the beach and cover them, before returning to the water and swimming home.



Serengeti wildebeest

spend more than half of their lives traveling. Every May, around one and a half million wildebeest travel approximately 3,000 kilometers around Tanzania and Kenya looking for food and water. They return when the rain comes, in November, and give birth.

2 Read the text again and find which animal ...

- spends the most time traveling in a year.
- travels in large numbers looking for water.
- dies after it lays its eggs.
- spends the summer in a cold place and the winter in a warm place.
- returns to its birthplace to lay eggs.

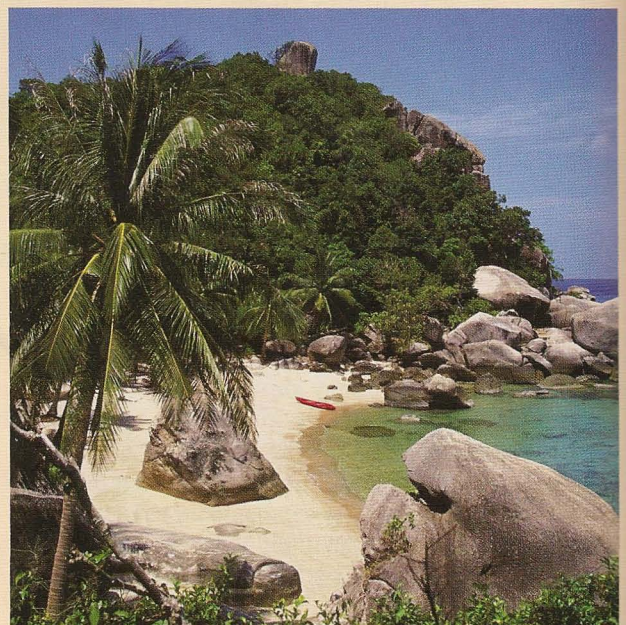
3 3.38 Listen to Dom talking to Lou about a long trip. Are these statements true or false?



- Lou went on vacation with Dom. *False*.
- Koh Tao means "Turtle Island."
- Their trip started in the evening.
- They slept well on their trip.
- They enjoyed the coffee at the station.
- They waited for four hours for the bus to arrive.
- It rained all the time.

4 Listen again and match the narrative linker with the event.

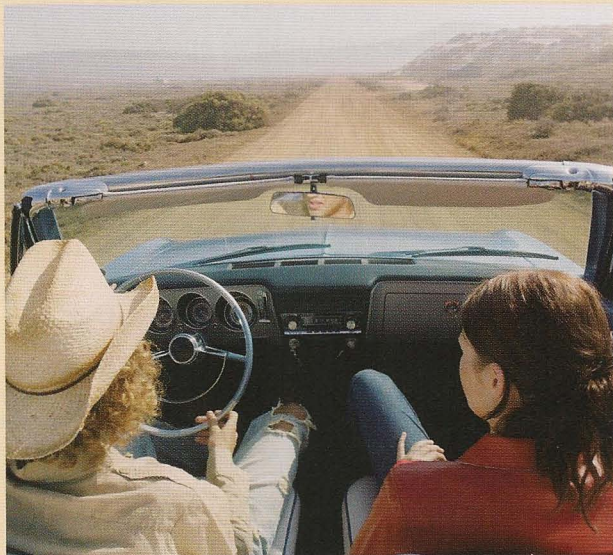
- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| a) At first | 1 we arrived at Koh Tao. |
| b) After an hour | 2 we felt excited. |
| c) The next morning | 3 it started raining. |
| d) Four hours later | 4 the bus arrived. |
| e) Then | 5 at three o'clock, the train stopped. |
| f) Eventually | 6 we started feeling pretty tired. |



Writing & Speaking

- 1 Complete the text about a trip. Use the words in the box.

At first Eventually four days suddenly
The next day Then ~~Two years ago~~



(1) *Two years ago* we decided to drive from São Paulo to Recife, in the north-east of Brazil. We set off early on the morning of December 26.
(2) _____ we made good progress. We spent the night in a small, friendly hotel. (3) _____ we passed Rio de Janeiro on our journey north, but some roads had been damaged by rain, which slowed us down. After (4) _____, we arrived in Porto Seguro, where we met up with some friends for New Year. (5) _____ our problems started. We were driving to Salvador when, (6) _____, our car broke down. We couldn't go anywhere for three more days while the car was being fixed. After that we went on, but the engine problems continued. (7) _____ we decided to turn back. We were only 280 kilometers away from Recife!

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- trip / start / you / did / your / Where ?
Where did you start your trip?
- you / did / go / Where ?
- there / you / How / get / did ?
- did / Where / at / night / stay / you ?
- have / you / Did / problems / any ?
- enjoy / you / your / Did / trip ?
- trip / the / How / long / take / did ?
- you / Would / again / it / do ?

Which questions were answered by the text?

- 3 Think about the longest trip you've ever been on.
- Think about how you would answer the questions in Exercise 2.
 - Tell your partner about your trip.
 - Use some of the expressions in Exercise 1.
- 4 Write an account of the longest trip you've ever been on. Use some of the phrases from Exercise 1 and answer some of the questions from Exercise 2.



3.39 Song: *I Say A Little Prayer*

Pairwork: Student A

Unit 1 USA quiz

You are going to ask Student B some general knowledge questions about the USA.

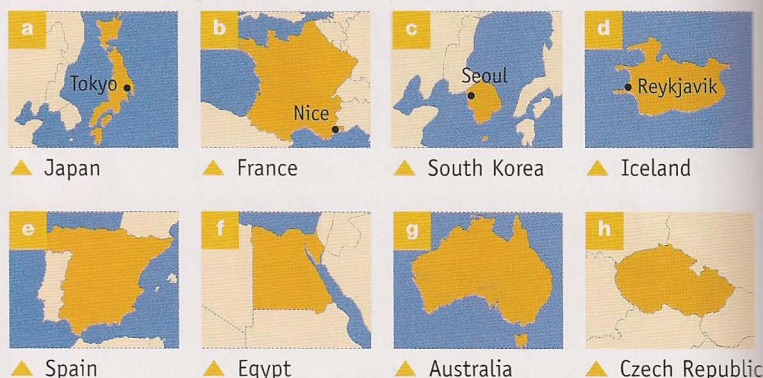
- Complete the questions with *What, Which, Who, Where* or *How*.
- Ask Student B the questions and give the three possible answers (*a, b, c*). (The correct answers are highlighted.)
- Compare your scores.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Which city in the USA has the highest population?
a) Los Angeles b) New York c) Chicago | 4 _____ did the USA become independent?
a) July 4, 1776 b) July 4, 1886 c) July 4, 1770 |
| 2 _____ is the capital city of the USA?
a) Los Angeles
b) New York
c) Washington, DC | 5 _____ is the Pentagon?
a) Virginia b) Texas c) Washington, DC |
| 3 _____ is the largest state (land area) in the USA?
a) California b) Texas c) Alaska | 6 _____ is the national anthem of the USA?
a) <i>Born in the USA</i>
b) <i>America the Beautiful</i>
c) <i>The Star Spangled Banner</i> |

Unit 2 Eight cities

You have eight maps of different countries (*a-h*).

- Four cities are marked on maps (*a-d*). Describe to Student B exactly where these cities are.
- Student B will describe the locations of the other four cities (*e-h*). Mark them on your maps.
- Compare your maps with Student B.



Unit 3 What were you doing yesterday?

Find out if you were doing the same things at the same times as Student B yesterday.

- Complete the sentences in the *Me* column describing what you were doing yesterday at those times.
- Ask Student B questions beginning *What were ...?* and complete the *Student B* column.

Student A: What were you doing at 6:00 a.m.?

Student B: I was sleeping.

- Were you doing the same thing or different things?

Me	Student B	✓ = We were doing the same thing X = We were doing different things
a) At 6:00 a.m. I was _____	He/She was _____	_____
b) At 7:30 a.m. I was _____	_____	_____
c) At 10:00 a.m. I was _____	_____	_____
d) At 1:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____
e) At 6:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____
f) At 11:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____

Unit 4 What's happening in your life?

How much do you know about what's happening in Student B's life right now?

- Write sentences in the affirmative or negative, according to what you think.
- Ask Student B questions to check if you were right or wrong.

Student A: Are you trying to give up smoking? Student B: Yes, I am. Student A: I was right!

Student B's name: _____	✓ = I was right! X = I was wrong!
a) try to give up smoking <i>He/She is trying to give up smoking.</i>	✓
b) learn to type _____	_____
c) write a book _____	_____
d) look for a new place to live _____	_____
e) apply for jobs _____	_____
f) learn to dance _____	_____
g) _____	_____

Unit 5 Trivia quiz

You and Student B each have five trivia questions. You have the correct answers to Student B's questions in the box below. Student B has the correct answers to your questions.

- Look at the trivia questions in the table and guess the answers.
- Complete the *My guess* column with your ideas.
- Ask Student B the questions and complete the *Correct answer* column.
- Compare your guesses with the correct answers. How good or bad were your guesses?

Trivia questions	My guess	Correct answer
a) How fast can a dolphin swim?	_____	_____
b) How much money did J.K. Rowling (author of <i>Harry Potter</i>) earn in 2005?	_____	_____
c) How many words does a woman speak in a normal day?	_____	_____
d) What percentage of the body's energy does the brain use?	_____	_____
e) What is the longest distance ever traveled in a wheelchair?	_____	_____

Answers to Student B's questions 105 km/h \$93,820,000 2,175 2% 4,203 km

Unit 6 Experiences

What experiences has Student B had?

- Write Student B's name in the space below.
- Write questions to check your statements.
- Write statements (a–g) that you think are true.
- Ask Student B the questions.

_____ (Student B's name) ...	Questions	✓ = I'm right! X = I'm wrong!
a) break his/her leg <i>Ana has (never) broken her leg.</i>	<i>Have you ever broken your leg?</i>	_____
b) sing karaoke	_____	_____
c) ride a motorcycle	_____	_____
d) go fishing	_____	_____
e) drink whiskey	_____	_____
f) buy a painting	_____	_____
g) _____	_____	_____

Unit 7 Your perfect week

Imagine that next week is going to be your perfect week.

- Fill in your organizer page below with two appointments each day. Use your imagination!
- Include three activities that you would like to do with Student B.
- Ask Student B if he or she is free to join you at those times.
- Discuss other possible times and note the final plans.

Student A: Would you like to go shopping on Monday afternoon?

Student B: No, thanks. I'm having coffee with Ricky Martin.

Student A: How about Thursday afternoon?

Student B: Oh, yes. I'd love to.

MONDAY 19

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

TUESDAY 20

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

WEDNESDAY 21

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

THURSDAY 22

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

FRIDAY 23

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

SATURDAY 24

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

Unit 8 School obligations

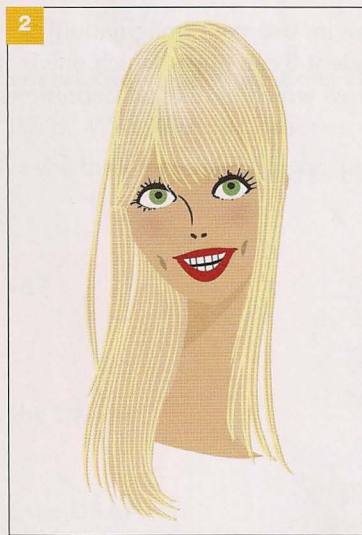
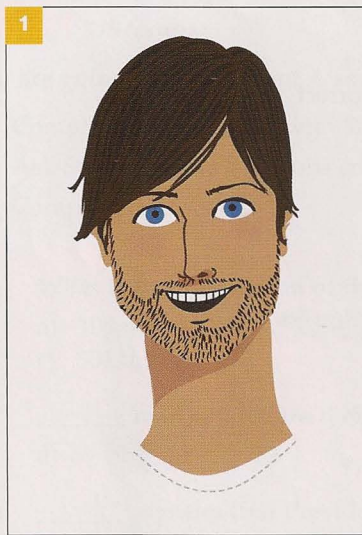
You are going to talk about things you had to do and things you didn't have to do when you were at school.

- Complete the sentences in the *Me* column with *I had to* or *I didn't have to*.
 - Ask Student B questions beginning *Did you have to ...?* and complete the *Student B* column.
- Student A: Did you have to get up before 7:00 a.m.? Student B: Yes, I did.
- Compare your experiences. Were they the same or different?

Me	Student B	✓ = The same X = Different
a) _____ get up before 7:00 a.m.	He/She _____	_____
b) _____ walk to school.	_____	_____
c) _____ learn English.	_____	_____
d) _____ wear a school uniform.	_____	_____
e) _____ turn off my cell phone in class.	_____	_____
f) _____ do homework every night.	_____	_____

Unit 9 Find the differences!

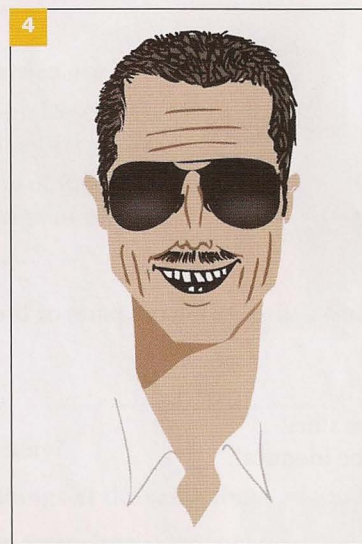
- Look at pictures 1 and 2. Student B has the same faces, but there are two small differences in each face.
- Describe the two faces to Student B and find the two differences in each picture.



Student A: In the first picture, it's a man's face. He has a beard. He has straight hair ...

Student B: In my picture, he has curly hair.

- Look at pictures 3 and 4. Student B has the same faces, but there are two small differences in each face.
- Listen to Student B describing the two faces and find the two differences in each picture.



Student B: In the third picture, it's a woman's face. She has dark hair. She has blue eyes ...

Student A: In my picture, she has brown eyes.

Unit 10 Ten years ago

- Think about your life ten years ago.
- Write six sentences – five true and one false – describing ways in which your life was different then. Choose from the topics below or use your own ideas.

car clothes favorite actors friends going out hairstyles hobbies music school
sports TV shows vacations

I used to have a red Ferrari. I used to wear Armani suits. I used to ...

- Read all your sentences. Student B guesses which sentence is false.
- Compare your lives then and now. How similar were your lives ten years ago?

Unit 11 Animal definitions

You are going to read out three definitions of some common expressions in English. The definitions with crosses are false, and the one with a check is true. Student B has to guess which definition (1, 2, or 3) is the correct one.

- Complete one false definition for each expression. Use your imagination!
- Read out your three definitions and see if Student B can guess which one is correct.
- Then listen to Student B's expressions and guess which of his/her definitions is correct.

- a) A "fat cat" is ...
- 1 somebody who is high up in the world of business. ✓
 - 2 somebody who needs to go on a diet. ✗
 - 3 somebody who _____. ✗
- b) A person who's "chicken" is ...
- 1 somebody who _____. ✗
 - 2 somebody who isn't brave. ✓
 - 3 somebody who talks a lot. ✗
- c) A "white elephant" is ...
- 1 a gift that is very unusual and valuable. ✗
 - 2 a gift that you don't want because you don't know what to do with it. ✓
 - 3 a gift that is _____. ✗
- d) Something that is "ratty" is ...
- 1 old and in bad condition. ✓
 - 2 irritating. ✗
 - 3 _____. ✗
- e) A person who "bugs" you is ...
- 1 somebody who imitates you. ✗
 - 2 somebody who _____. ✗
 - 3 somebody who annoys you. ✓

Unit 12 Emilia and Pedro

You are going to complete a story about Emilia and Pedro. You have parts of the story. Student B has other parts.

- Read aloud your parts of the story to Student B.
- Listen and write down Student B's parts of the story.
- Compare your completed texts. They should be identical.



TEXT *before marriage*

A clairvoyant had once told Emilia Sanchez that she would meet her husband when she was 21.

She was _____

One day, she tapped the text message, "Do you want to talk?" into her cell phone. She then invented a number and sent the message.

She didn't know _____

He called Emilia, and they talked for about an hour. They found that they had lots in common and made plans to meet.

They _____

Pairwork: Student B

Unit 1 USA quiz

You are going to ask Student A some general knowledge questions about the USA.

- Complete the questions with *What, Which, Who, Where* or *How*.
- Ask Student A the questions and give the three possible answers (*a, b, c*). (The correct answers are highlighted.)
- Compare your scores.

1 What is the population of the USA?

- a) 100 million b) 292 million
c) 301 million

2 How many states are there in the USA?

- a) 59 b) 50 c) 52

3 Who was the first President of the USA?

- a) Abraham Lincoln b) George Washington
c) Thomas Jefferson

4 Which is the smallest state (land area) in the USA?

- a) Delaware b) Rhode Island
c) New Hampshire

5 What state in the USA has the highest population?

- a) California b) Texas c) Florida

6 How many cents are there in a dollar?

- a) 12 b) 10 c) 100

Unit 2 Eight cities

You have eight maps of different countries *a-h*.

- Four cities are marked on maps (*e-h*). Describe to Student A exactly where these cities are.
- Student A will describe the locations of the other four cities (*a-d*). Mark them on your maps.
- Compare your maps with Student A.



▲ Japan



▲ France



▲ South Korea



▲ Iceland



▲ Spain



▲ Egypt



▲ Australia



▲ Czech Republic

Unit 3 What were you doing yesterday?

Find out if you were doing the same things at the same times as Student A yesterday.

- Complete the sentences in the *Me* column describing what you were doing yesterday at those times.
- Ask Student A questions beginning *What were ...?* and complete the *Student A* column.
Student B: *What were you doing at 6:00 a.m?*
Student A: *I was sleeping.*
- Were you doing the same thing or different things?

Me	Student A	✓ = We were doing the same thing X = We were doing different things
a) At 6:00 a.m. I was _____	He/She was _____	_____
b) At 7:30 a.m. I was _____	_____	_____
c) At 10:00 a.m. I was _____	_____	_____
d) At 1:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____
e) At 6:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____
f) At 11:00 p.m. I was _____	_____	_____

Unit 4 What's happening in your life?

How much do you know about what's happening in Student A's life right now?

- Write sentences in the affirmative or negative, according to what you think.
- Ask Student A questions to check if you were right or wrong.

Student B: Are you trying to do more exercise? Student A: Yes, I am. Student B: I was right!

Student A's name: _____	✓ = I was right! ✗ = I was wrong!
a) try to do more exercise <i>He/She is trying to do more exercise.</i>	✓
b) learn to drive _____	_____
c) plan a trip abroad _____	_____
d) read a good book _____	_____
e) look for a new job _____	_____
f) learn to play the guitar _____	_____
g) _____	_____

Unit 5 Trivia quiz

You and Student A each have five trivia questions. You have the correct answers to Student A's questions in the box below. Student A has the correct answers to your questions.

- Look at the trivia questions in the table and guess the answers.
- Complete the *My guess* column with your ideas.
- Ask Student A the questions and complete the *Correct answer* column.
- Compare your guesses with the correct answers. How good or bad were your guesses?

Trivia questions	My guess	Correct answer
a) How fast can a cheetah run?	_____	_____
b) How much money did Dan Brown (author of <i>The Da Vinci Code</i>) earn in 2005?	_____	_____
c) How many words does a man speak in a normal day?	_____	_____
d) What percentage of the body's weight is the brain?	_____	_____
e) What is the longest distance ever traveled on a windsurf board?	_____	_____

Answers to Student A's questions 30 km/h \$80,137,000 7,120 20% 40,075.16 km

Unit 6 Experiences

What experiences has Student A had?

- Write Student A's name in the space below.
- Write questions to check your statements.
- Write statements (a-g) that you think are true.
- Ask Student A the questions to find out if you are right or wrong.

_____ (Student A's name) ...	Questions	✓ = I'm right! ✗ = I'm wrong!
a) go to Canada <i>Jan has (never) been to Canada.</i>	<i>Have you ever been to Canada?</i>	_____
b) give a speech	_____	_____
c) break the speed limit	_____	_____
d) cut somebody's hair	_____	_____
e) cry at the movies	_____	_____
f) forget his/her mother's birthday	_____	_____
g) _____	_____	_____

Unit 7 Your perfect week

Imagine that next week is going to be your perfect week.

- Fill in your organizer page below with two appointments each day. Use your imagination!
- Include three activities that you would like to do with Student A.
- Ask Student A if he or she is free to join you at those times.
- Discuss other possible times and note the final plans.

Student B: Would you like to go to the beach on Tuesday afternoon?

Student A: No, thanks, I'm going shopping with Paris Hilton.

Student B: How about Wednesday afternoon?

Student A: Oh, yes. I'd love to.

MONDAY 19

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

TUESDAY 20

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

WEDNESDAY 21

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

THURSDAY 22

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

FRIDAY 23

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

SATURDAY 24

A.M.

P.M.

EVENING

Unit 8 School obligations

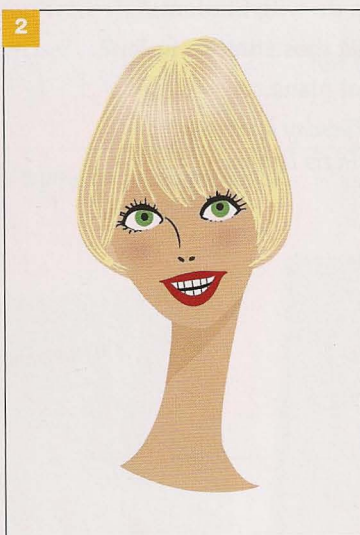
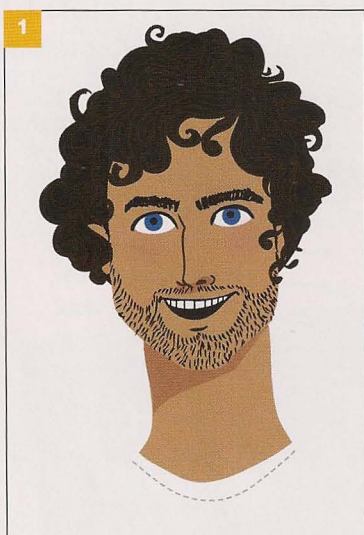
You are going to talk about things you had to do and things you didn't have to do when you were at school.

- Complete the sentences in the *Me* column with *I had to* or *I didn't have to*.
 - Ask Student A questions beginning *Did you have to ...?* and complete the *Student A* column.
- Student B: Did you have to go to school by bus? Student A: Yes, I did.
- Compare your experiences. Were they the same or different?

Me	Student A	✓ = The same X = Different
a) _____ go to school by bus.	He/She _____	_____
b) _____ play team sports.	_____	_____
c) _____ sit at the same desk every day.	_____	_____
d) _____ have lunch at school.	_____	_____
e) _____ take exams every year.	_____	_____
f) _____ go to bed before 10:00 p.m.	_____	_____

Unit 9 Find the differences!

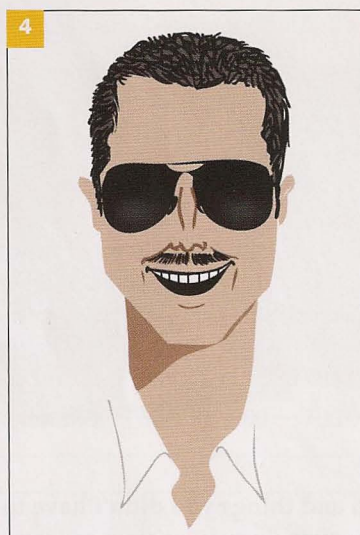
- Look at pictures 1 and 2. Student A has the same faces, but there are two small differences in each face.
- Listen to Student A describing the two faces and find the two differences in each picture.



Student A: In the first picture, it's a man's face. He has a beard. He has straight hair ...

Student B: In my picture, he has curly hair.

- Look at pictures 3 and 4. Student A has the same faces, but there are two small differences in each face.
- Describe the two faces to Student A and find the two differences in each picture.



Student B: In the third picture, it's a woman's face. She has dark hair. She has blue eyes ...

Student A: In my picture, she has brown eyes.

Unit 10 Ten years ago

- Think about your life ten years ago.
- Write six sentences – five true and one false – describing ways in which your life was different then. Choose from the topics below or use your own ideas.

car clothes favorite actors friends going out hairstyles hobbies music school
sports TV shows vacations

I used to like Michelle Pfeiffer. I used to go out with my friends every Friday night. I used to ...

- Read all your sentences. Student A guesses which sentence is false.
- Compare your lives then and now. How similar were your lives ten years ago?

Unit 11 Animal definitions

You are going to read out three definitions of some common expressions in English. The definitions with crosses are false, and the one with a check is true. Student A has to guess which definition (1, 2, or 3) is the correct one.

- Complete one false definition for each expression. Use your imagination!
- Listen to Student A's expressions and guess which of his/her definitions is correct.
- Then read out your three definitions and see if Student A can guess which one is correct.

- a) A "catty" person is ...
- 1 somebody who is independent and a little unfriendly. ✗
 - 2 somebody who says cruel things about other people. ✓
 - 3 somebody who _____. ✗
- b) A "fishy" story is ...
- 1 a story that has a funny ending. ✗
 - 2 a story that _____. ✗
 - 3 a story that isn't completely honest. ✓
- c) A movie that's considered to be a "turkey" is ...
- 1 a movie that doesn't have a famous star in it. ✗
 - 2 a movie that _____. ✗
 - 3 a movie that isn't successful. ✓
- d) A "book worm" is ...
- 1 somebody who _____. ✗
 - 2 somebody who reads a lot. ✓
 - 3 somebody who doesn't like reading. ✗
- e) A "mousy" person is ...
- 1 somebody who lives in a small apartment. ✗
 - 2 somebody who is quiet and prefers not to be noticed. ✓
 - 3 somebody who _____. ✗

Unit 12 Emilia and Pedro

You are going to complete a story about Emilia and Pedro. You have parts of the story. Student A has other parts.

- Listen and write down Student A's parts of the story.
- Read aloud your parts of the story to Student A.
- Compare your completed texts. They should be identical.



TEXT *before marriage*

A clairvoyant had _____

She was now almost 22 and hadn't met the love of her life yet.

One day, _____

She didn't know that the number belonged to her future husband. Pedro Gonzales was at work 140 kilometers away when he got the message.

He called Emilia, _____

They got married six months later.

Grammar *Extra*

Unit 1 Questions. Tense review

Questions

Word order

The usual word order for questions is:

Question word	(Auxiliary) verb	Subject	
—	Is	she	happy?
—	Have	they	eaten?
What	does	"niece"	mean?
Where	are	you	going?
When	did	he	graduate?

Yes/No questions and short answers

In *Yes/No* questions with *be*, you put *am/are/is/was/were* before the subject.

Is she tired? Yes, she is.

Were they late? No, they weren't.

In *Yes/No* questions with the simple present and the simple past, you put *do/does/did* before the subject.

Do you live here? Yes, I do.

Did Jim and his two sisters go to college? No, they didn't.

In *Yes/No* questions with other verb structures, you put the auxiliary verb before the subject.

Have you been to Peru? Yes, I have.

Can she drive? No, she can't.

Wh questions

Questions with *What, Where, How many*, etc. have the same word order as *Yes/No* questions.

You put a question word at the beginning of the question.

Why is she tired? *Where do you live?* *How many times have you been to Peru?*

Tense review

Tense	Uses	Affirmative	Negative	Question
Simple present	Facts/habits/routines	He works .	He doesn't work .	Does he work?
Simple past	Completed action at a specific past time	She worked yesterday.	She didn't work yesterday.	Did she work yesterday?
Present progressive	Activities in progress now	They're working now.	They aren't working now.	Are they working now?
Future (<i>be</i>) <i>going to</i>	Future plans and intentions	We're going to work at home tomorrow.	We aren't going to work at home tomorrow.	Are we going to work at home tomorrow?
Present perfect	Completed action in "time up to now"	It's worked recently.	It hasn't worked recently.	Has it worked recently?

Unit 1 Exercises

1 Write Yes/No questions with *you*.

Somebody wants to know if you ...

- like jazz
Do you like jazz?
- can swim
- went skiing last winter
- are wearing jeans today
- have been to Argentina
- are going to drive home after the class

2 Write short answers to the questions in Exercise 1.

- Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*

Check (✓) the short answer that is true for you.

3 Think of a person you know well. Use the information in Exercise 1 and write Yes/No questions and short answers with *he* or *she*.

- Does he like jazz?*
Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

Check (✓) the short answer that is true (if you know it).

4 Insert the subject *you* in the correct position to make questions.

- How far do live from the school?
How far do you live from the school?
- When did last go to the theater?
- What are going to do this evening?
- How many cups of coffee have had today?
- What kind of pen are using right now?
- Where did buy your shoes?

Ask your partner the questions.

5 Complete the questions with *you* and then match the questions and the answers.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| a) What / do? <i>What do you do?</i> | 1 | In 2005. |
| b) Who / work for? | 2 | On foot. |
| c) Which department / work in? | 3 | I'm a computer programmer. |
| d) How / get to work? | 4 | Because I love computer games. |
| e) When / start working there? | 5 | In the games department. |
| f) Why / like working there? | 6 | \$63,000 a year. |
| g) How much / earn? | 7 | Microsoft. |

Write your own answers to the questions.

6 Name the tense for each sentence.

- We're studying Shakespeare in our English class. *Present progressive.*
- My parents named me after my uncle.
- I've recently learned to drive.
- My friends are going to organize a party for me tomorrow.
- I like getting up early in the morning.

Put each sentence into the negative.

- We aren't studying Shakespeare in our English class.*

Check (✓) the sentences (affirmative or negative) that are true for you.

- We're studying Shakespeare in our English class. ✓*



Unit 2 Nouns and quantity expressions

Countable nouns

Most nouns in English are countable. They have a singular and a plural form.

Regular forms		
Singular	Plural	Spelling
a place	two places	Add s .
a church	three churches	Add es after <i>ch, sh, s, x</i> .
a city	ten cities	Add ies after a consonant + <i>y</i> .
a leaf	ten thousand leaves	Add ves after vowel + <i>f</i>

Irregular forms	
Singular	Plural
a person	two people
a child	two children
a man	two men
a woman	two women
a foot	two feet
a tooth	two teeth

⚠ *a* or *an*?

With singular nouns, you use *a* before a consonant sound: *a town, a college*.

You use *an* before a vowel sound: *an airport, an office*.

⚠ Plural nouns

Some nouns are always plural and don't have a singular form. You can't use *a/an* or put a number in front of them.

I have some pink jeans. (NOT ~~*I have a pink jeans.*~~)

Common plural nouns: *clothes, glasses, jeans, pajamas, pants, scissors, shorts, sunglasses*.

Uncountable nouns

Some nouns in English are uncountable. They only have a singular form. You can't use *a/an* or put a number in front of them.

We had bad weather. (NOT ~~*We had a bad weather.*~~)

Common uncountable nouns: *advice, architecture, food, furniture, homework, information, knowledge, love, money, music, news, traffic, transportation, weather, work*.

Quantity expressions

These are ways you can talk about quantity if you can't or don't want to use an exact number.

With countable nouns: (only) *a few* / (way) *too many* / *How many ...?*

Only a few people saw what happened.

How many emails do you get every day?

With uncountable nouns: (only) *a little* / (way) *too much* / *How much ...?*

There's a little wine left, but no beer.

How much homework do you get?

With countable and uncountable nouns: *a lot of* / *lots of* / *not ... enough*

She has a lot of problems.

He didn't give me enough information.

too + much/many (+ noun) = excessive or more than necessary.

I have too much work and not enough time.

Unit 2 Exercises

1 Write the plural forms for the following countable nouns.

- a) a name *names* c) a menu e) a family g) a person i) a day k) a camera
b) a place d) a bus f) a wife h) a foot j) a mouse l) a watch

2 Put the nouns in the box into the table.

advice ~~child~~ city homework information money
news office problem tooth weather woman

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
<i>child</i>	<i>advice</i>

Add three more nouns to each column.

3 Complete the sentences with *alan* or *some*.

- a) I have *some* money in my pocket. e) I have _____ homework to do this evening.
b) I have _____ gold ring on my finger. f) I have _____ laptop I use for work.
c) I have _____ black jeans at home. g) I have _____ great music on my MP3 player.
d) I have _____ scissors in my bag. h) I have _____ sunglasses in my car.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

4 Underline the correct form of *be*.

- a) How is / are the weather today?
b) How was / were the traffic this morning?
c) What is / are the people like on your street?
d) What is / are the furniture like in your living room?
e) What was / were the English teachers like at your high school?
f) What was / were the food like at the last restaurant you went to?

Ask your partner the questions.

5 Complete the sentences with *be* + *a lot of*.

In my city ...

- a) there *are a lot of* parks. c) there _____ good restaurants. e) there _____ pollution.
b) there _____ good nightlife. d) there _____ traffic. f) there _____ bookstores.

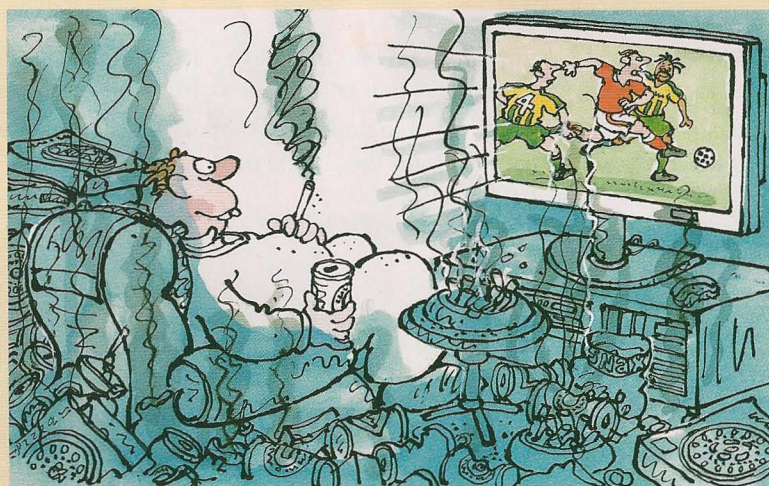
Make the sentences negative. Use *not be* + *much/many*.

- a) *There aren't many parks.*

Which sentences are true for your city?

6 Look at Paul. What do you think is wrong with his lifestyle? Write sentences with *too much/many* and *not enough*.

- a) drink / beer
He drinks too much beer.
b) eat / pizzas
c) eat / fruit and vegetables
d) smoke / cigarettes
e) do / exercise
f) watch / TV
g) get / fresh air



Unit 3 Simple past. Past progressive

Part 1: Simple past

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He/She/It/ We/They worked .	I/You/He/She/ It/We/They didn't (did not) work .	Did I/you/he/ she/it/we/they work ?	Yes, I/you/he/she/ it/we/they did .	No, I/you/he/ she/it/we/they didn't .

Spelling: regular verbs

Add *ed/d* after most verbs: work – **worked**, demonstrate – **demonstrated**

Delete *y* and add *ied* for verbs that end in a consonant + *y*: study – **studied**; try – **tried**

Add a consonant + *ed* for verbs that end in one vowel + one consonant: stop – **stopped**; plan – **planned**

The ten most frequently used irregular verbs are:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 say – said | 6 see – saw |
| 2 get – got | 7 make – made |
| 3 go – went | 8 come – came |
| 4 know – knew | 9 take – took |
| 5 think – thought | 10 give – gave |

See a fuller list of irregular verbs on page 159.

You can use the simple past as the main tense to talk about past events and past situations.

It's commonly used to tell stories.

⚠ There is only *one* past form for every verb except *be*.

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/He/She/It was tired.	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) tired.	Was I/he/she/it tired?	Yes, I/he/she/it was .	No, I/he/she/it wasn't .
You/We/They were tired.	You/We/They weren't (were not) tired.	Were you/we/ they tired?	Yes, you/we/they were .	No, you/we/they weren't .

Part 2: Past progressive

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/He/She/It was working .	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) working .	Was I/he/she/it working?	Yes, I/he/she/it was .	No, I/he/she/it wasn't .
You/We/They were working.	You/We/They weren't (were not) working .	Were you/we/ they working?	Yes, you/we/they were .	No, you/we/they weren't .

Spelling: *ing*-forms

Delete *e* and add *ing* for verbs that end in *e*: have – **having**; make – **making**

Add a consonant + *ing* for verbs that end in one vowel + one consonant: run – **running**; stop – **stopping**

You can use the past progressive to describe a “longer” activity that was in progress when other past events happened.

You usually use it in contrast with the simple past.

*I saw her when I **was driving** home.*

*They **were playing** tennis when it started raining.*

Unit 3 Exercises

Part 1

1 Write the simple past forms for these verb sets.

- a) work *worked* / go / call / help c) try / play / study / copy
b) take / make / wake / bake d) stop / plan / hop / walk

In each set, which verb doesn't belong? Why?

- a) "go – went" doesn't belong because it's irregular.

2 Write the simple past forms of these irregular verbs.

- | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|----------|----------|----------|---------------|---------|----------|
| a) teach <i>taught</i> | e) speak | i) fall | m) sink | q) understand | u) find | y) meet |
| b) sit | f) make | j) learn | n) throw | r) bring | v) wear | z) think |
| c) say | g) begin | k) catch | o) swim | s) run | w) buy | |
| d) know | h) ring | l) fly | p) read | t) sleep | x) come | |

3 Use the prompts in parentheses to write negative sentences about the past.



- | | |
|--|---|
| a) My father taught me how to swim. (how to drive)
<i>My father didn't teach me how to drive.</i> | d) I had fish for dinner last night. (meat) |
| b) I went to a public school. (private school) | e) I studied French at school. (English) |
| c) My parents gave me money for my birthday. (a gift) | f) I played tennis when I was young. (basketball) |

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

Part 2

1 Write the *ing*-form of these verbs.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| a) come <i>coming</i> | c) hit | e) play | g) smoke | i) swim | k) win |
| b) eat | d) leave | f) put | h) study | j) wake | l) work |

2 Complete the questions and short answers about these times yesterday.

- a) **8:00 a.m.** Were you having breakfast? Yes, I *was*. No, I *wasn't*.
b) **8:30 a.m.** Were you driving to work? Yes, I _____. No, I _____.
c) **10:00 a.m.** _____ your mother working? Yes, she _____. No, she _____.
d) **4:00 p.m.** _____ you walking around town? Yes, I _____. No, I _____.
e) **8:00 p.m.** _____ your parents watching TV? Yes, they _____. No, they _____.

Ask your partner the questions.

3 Complete the sentences with the simple past or the past progressive.

- a) We (move) *moved* several times when I was a child.
b) My parents met when they (study) _____ at college.
c) When I finished school, I (start) _____ work in a bank.
d) When I looked out of the window this morning, it (rain) _____.
e) When I got to work, I (turn on) _____ my computer.
f) When the teacher came into the classroom, I (talk) _____ to my friend on my cell phone.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

Unit 4 Verb patterns. Simple present and present progressive

Part 1: Verb patterns – verbs with two objects

Some common verbs can have two objects. Two different word orders are possible, but the meaning is the same. The word order **verb + person + thing** is more common, especially with object pronouns (*me, you, him, etc.*).

		(indirect object)	(direct object)			(direct object)	(indirect object)					
verb	+	person	+	thing	=	verb	+	thing	+	to/for	+	person
I	bought	him		a gift.	=	I	bought	a gift		for		him.
He	lent	her		some money.	=	He	lent	some money		to		her.

Common verbs with the pattern **verb + thing + to + person**: *give, lend, offer, pass, read, send, show, teach, tell*.

Common verbs with the pattern **verb + thing + for + person**: *buy, find, get, make*.

⚠ You can't use the word order **verb + person + thing** with certain verbs: e.g. *describe, explain, say, or suggest*.
He explained the situation to me. (NOT *He explained me the situation.*)
She said hello to us. (NOT *She said us hello.*)

Part 2: Simple present and present progressive

Simple present

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/We/They work.	I/You/We/They don't (do not) work.	Do I/you/we/they work?	Yes, I/you/we/they do.	No, I/you/we/they don't.
He/She/It works.	He/She/It doesn't (does not) work.	Does he/she/it work?	Yes, he/she/it does.	No, he/she/it doesn't.

Spelling: 3rd person singular

Add *s* after most verbs: *live – lives; play – plays; work – works*

Add *es* after *ch, sh, s, x*: *watch – watches; finish – finishes*

Delete *y* and add *ies* after a consonant + *y*: *study – studies*

Irregular forms: *do – does; go – goes; have – has*

You can use the simple present to talk about:

- things that are always true. *He looks like his father. Ice forms at 0°C.*
- things that happen regularly or all the time. *He plays tennis on Friday. She never gets up before 9:00 a.m.*

Present progressive

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I'm (am) working.	I'm not (am not) working.	Am I working?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
You/We/They're (are) working.	You/We/They aren't (are not) working.	Are you/we/they working?	Yes, you/we/they are.	No, you/we/they aren't.
He/She/It's (is) working.	He/She/It isn't (is not) working.	Is he/she/it working?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.

Spelling: *ing*-forms

Delete *e* and add *ing* for verbs that end in *e*: *have – having; make – making*

Add a consonant + *ing* for verbs that end in one vowel + one consonant: *run – running; stop – stopping*

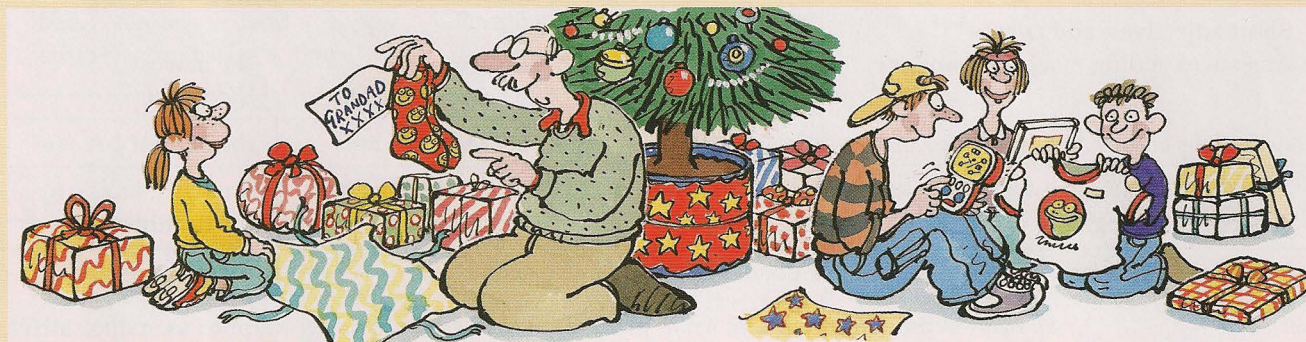
You can use the present progressive to talk about:

- activities that are in progress at the moment of speaking. *What are you doing? I'm writing an email.*
- activities that are in progress around the moment of speaking. *Cars are getting cheaper, but house prices are going up.*

Unit 4 Exercises

Part 1

1 Complete the sentences about last Christmas.



- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) Anna: some socks → Grandpa | d) Sue: a cook book → Carla |
| Anna gave Grandpa some socks. | e) Becky: a CD → Eric |
| b) John: an MP3 player → Tony | f) Jimmy: some earrings → Sally |
| c) Dick: some chocolate → Molly | |

What gifts did you give people last year?

I gave my mom a foot spa.

2 Underline the appropriate prepositions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a) Could you send the money for / to me? | f) We showed pictures of our vacation for / to him. |
| b) She explained the rules for / to them. | g) Ian is getting some ice cream for / to us. |
| c) My dad bought this for / to me for my birthday. | h) They didn't say goodbye for / to us. |
| d) I've told that joke for / to everybody! | i) I don't want to make breakfast for / to him! |
| e) He described the house for / to her. | j) Can you lend your bike for / to Sue? |

3 Re-read the sentences in Exercise 2. Where possible, change the word order and rewrite the sentences without the prepositions.

- a) *Could you send me the money?* b) *(Not possible to change.)*

Part 2

1 Write these verbs in the simple present 3rd person singular.

- | | | | | | |
|--------|-------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| a) be | c) do | e) have | g) pay | i) say | k) take |
| b) cry | d) go | f) hear | h) push | j) study | l) touch |

2 Write the *ing*-form of these verbs.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| a) become | c) cut | e) live | g) shine | i) sit | k) stay |
| b) choose | d) fly | f) meet | h) shut | j) start | l) wear |

3 Write a question in the simple present and a question in the present progressive for each prompt.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| a) you / wear / perfume?
<i>Do you wear perfume?</i> | b) you / use / an electronic dictionary?
<i>Are you wearing perfume?</i> | e) your teacher / wear / glasses?
<i>What / you / do?</i> |
| c) you / plan / your vacations? | d) your parents / work? | |

Answer the questions. Think about the difference in meaning for each question.

4 Complete the questions with *you* in the most appropriate tense: simple present or present progressive.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| a) Where / come from?
<i>Where do you come from?</i> | c) What / wear today?
<i>What are you wearing today?</i> | f) What color pen / use to do this exercise?
<i>What color pen do you use to do this exercise?</i> |
| b) How many languages / speak?
<i>How many languages do you speak?</i> | d) Why / learn English?
<i>Why are you learning English?</i> | |
| e) What time / usually go to bed?
<i>What time do you usually go to bed?</i> | | |

Answer the questions.

Unit 5 Comparative and superlative adjectives. Phrasal verbs

Part 1: Comparative and superlative adjectives

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives: add <i>er/est</i> Adjectives ending in a consonant or <i>e</i>	new nice	newer nicer	the newest the nicest
Adjectives ending in a single vowel + a single consonant	big	bigger	the biggest
Adjectives ending in <i>y</i>	healthy	healthier	the healthiest
Irregular adjectives	good bad	better worse	the best the worst
Long adjectives: add <i>more / the most</i>	exciting	more exciting	the most exciting

You use comparative adjectives to compare people/things with other people/things.

*Fernando Alonso is **older than** Lewis Hamilton.*

You can use *a little bit* or *much* to modify comparisons.

*Olímpico Stadium is **a little bit bigger than** the Jalisco Stadium.*

*Cristiano Ronaldo is **much better looking than** Wayne Rooney.*

You use *not as* + adjective + *as* to make negative comparisons.

*Golf is **not as dangerous as** motor racing.*

You use superlative adjectives to compare people/things with all the other people/things in their group.

*Muhammad Ali is **the greatest** sportsman of all time.*

*Soccer is **the most popular** sport in the world.*

Part 2: Phrasal verbs

The term "phrasal verb" usually refers to all multi-word verbs, consisting of a verb + particle(s). Phrasal verbs can be divided into three basic types.

1 Verb + particle (INTRANSITIVE)

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive and don't take a direct object.

Sit down and enjoy it.

When are you going to grow up?

2 Verb + object + particle (TRANSITIVE – SEPARABLE)

The biggest group of phrasal verbs is transitive. These verbs take a direct object.

With separable verbs, when the direct object is a noun, you can put it before or after the particle.

Take off your shoes. OR Take your shoes off.

When the direct object is a pronoun, you have to put it between the verb and the particle.

Turn it off, please. (NOT ~~Turn off it.~~)

3 Verb + particle + object (TRANSITIVE – NOT SEPARABLE)

With this type of phrasal verb, you always put the direct object – noun or pronoun – after the particle.

She takes care of her grandmother.

I ran after the bus, but it didn't stop.

Unit 5 Exercises

Part 1

1 Complete the table with the adjectives in the box. There are three adjectives in each section.

bad famous good happy interesting kind lazy lucky nice sad
strong successful thin wet

a) Add <i>er/r</i>	<i>kind – kinder than</i>
b) Double letter + <i>er</i>	<i>sad – sadder than</i>
c) Delete <i>y</i> , add <i>ier</i>	<i>happy – happier than</i>

d) Irregular	<i>bad – worse than</i>
e) <i>more</i> + adjective	<i>famous – more famous than</i>

2 Write sentences comparing the places. Use *a little bit* or *much* and the comparative form of the adjective.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| a) France / big / Spain
<i>France is a little bit bigger than Spain.</i> | d) Tokyo / expensive / Bangkok |
| b) India / hot / Canada | e) Rome / far north / Barcelona |
| c) The Nile River / long / the Amazon | f) Manila / crowded / Helsinki |

Rewrite the sentences using *not as ... as* so they have the same meaning.

- a) *Spain isn't as big as France.*

3 Use *a little bit* / *much* / *not as ... as* to write true sentences comparing the following. Use the adjectives in the box or your own ideas.

complicated confident difficult energetic expensive
healthy large modern old sophisticated

- | | |
|--|---|
| a) your mom / your dad
<i>My mom is a little bit older than my dad.</i> | d) your first cell phone / the cell phone you have now |
| b) English / your language | e) the house you were born in / the house you live in now |
| c) you ten years ago / you now | f) your town ten years ago / your town now |

Compare your sentences with a partner.

Part 2

1 Rewrite these sentences so that they have the same meaning.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a) Can you turn off the light, please?
<i>Can you turn the light off, please?</i> | d) Pick all the papers up before you leave! |
| b) She threw my letter away. | e) Write down your name, please. |
| c) I'd like to try on this dress, please. | f) I gave back his pen. |

2 Put the words in parentheses in the correct order to complete each sentence. Consult your dictionary if necessary.

- I'm very similar to my mother – I *take after her*. (after / take / her)
- I have good relationships with my neighbors – I _____. (get / well / them / with / along)
- I keep my neighbors' pet when they go on vacation – I _____. (take care / it / of)
- I lived with my grandparents when I was a child – they _____. (up / brought / me)
- My children always leave their things on the floor – they don't _____. (away / them / put)
- I invent excuses when I'm late – I _____. (make / up / them)
- I stopped going to the gym – I _____. (up / it / gave)
- When I see a new phrasal verb, I consult my dictionary – I _____. (it / look / up)

Are any of the sentences true for you?



Unit 6 Permission and obligation (present). Present perfect

Part 1: *can* for permission; *have to* for obligation

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. can work.	I/You/He, etc. can't (cannot) work.	Can I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. can.	No, I/you/he, etc. can't.

You can use *can* and *can't* to talk about permission.

- can* means something is permitted: it's OK. *In my country, you **can** leave school when you are sixteen.*
- can't* means something isn't permitted: it isn't OK. *You **can't** vote until you are eighteen.*

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/We/They have to work.	I/You/We/They don't have to work.	Do I/you/we/they have to work?	Yes, I/you/we/ they do.	No, I/you/we/they don't.
He/She/It has to work.	He/She/It doesn't have to work.	Does he/she/it have to work?	Yes, he/she/it does.	No, he/she/it doesn't.

You use *have to* / *don't have to* to talk about necessity or obligation.

- have to* means something is necessary or it's obligatory. *In the USA, you **have to** drive on the right.*
- don't have to* means something isn't necessary or it isn't obligatory. *You **don't have to** wear a helmet on a bicycle.*

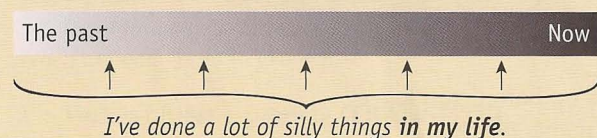
Part 2: Present perfect

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/We/They've (have) worked.	I/You/We/They haven't (have not) worked.	Have I/you/we/ they worked?	Yes, I/you/we/ they have.	No, I/you/we/ they haven't.
He/She/It's (has) worked.	He/She/It hasn't (has not) worked.	Has he/she/it worked?	Yes, he/she/it has.	No, he/she/it hasn't.

See the list of irregular verbs on page 159.

You can use the present perfect to talk about completed actions in time "up to now." You don't focus on *when*.

Time "up to now"



Common time expressions which describe time "up to now": *today, this week, recently, never, over the years.*

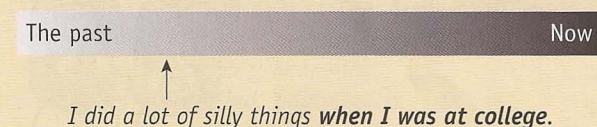
With these time expressions, you usually use the present perfect.

*My brother **has never been** to a rock concert. I **haven't seen** any good movies **recently**.*

⚠ *been* is the past participle of *be*, but you can also use it as a past participle of *go*. Compare:

- He's **been** to Rome.* = He went and came back.
- He's **gone** to Rome.* = He went and is in Rome now.

"Finished" time



Common time expressions which describe "finished" time: *yesterday, last month, in 1990, a few minutes ago.*

With these time expressions, you use the simple past.

*She **called** you a few minutes ago. I **didn't go** to the mountains **last summer**.*

Unit 6 Exercises

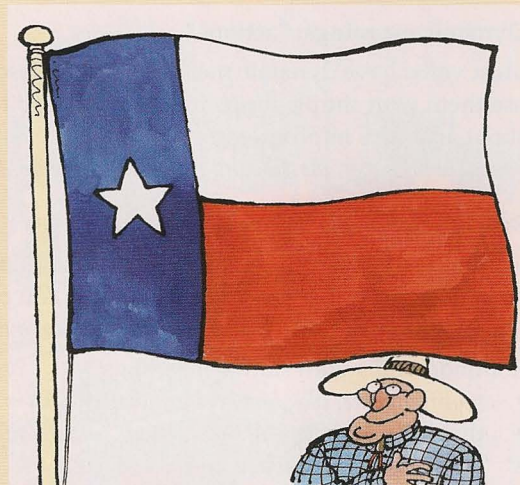
Part 1

- 1 Work with a partner. Test your knowledge of life in Texas. Underline the correct verbs in these sentences.

- You have to / can leave school when you're sixteen.
- You don't have to / can't wear a helmet on a bicycle.
- You have to / can vote when you're eighteen.
- You don't have to / can't get married until you're eighteen.
- You have to / can buy alcohol when you're twenty-one.
- You have to / can drive on the right.
- You have to / can drive a car when you're sixteen.
- You don't have to / can't carry an ID card.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for your country.

- 2 Write similar sentences about the things you *can*, *can't*, *have to*, or *don't have to* do in your country.



Part 2

- 1 Complete the tables with the correct past participles for these irregular verbs.

Infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
be	was/were	(1) <i>been</i>
do	did	(2) _____
take	took	(3) _____
drink	drank	(4) _____
break	broke	(5) _____
see	saw	(6) _____
eat	ate	(7) _____

Infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
write	wrote	(8) _____
forget	forgot	(9) _____
ride	rode	(10) _____
become	became	(11) _____
stand	stood	(12) _____
give	gave	(13) _____
go	went	(14) <i>gone</i> / (15) _____

- 2 Write the sentences in the negative.

- I've been on TV.
I haven't been on TV.
- I've sung karaoke.
- I've driven a sports car.
- I've met a famous person.
- I've climbed a mountain.
- I've called up a TV show.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

- 3 Write present perfect questions with *you* for the sentences in Exercise 2.

- Have you been on TV?*

Ask your partner the questions.

- 4 Underline the correct tense.

- I've never been / never went to Australia.
- I haven't done / didn't do my homework last night.
- My parents haven't called / didn't call me recently.
- I've never eaten / didn't eat sushi.
- I've been / went skiing last winter.
- I've had / had a bicycle when I was a child.

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.



Unit 7 Dynamic and stative meanings. Future forms

Part 1: Dynamic and stative meanings

Dynamic meanings: "actions"

Most verbs have dynamic meanings. They describe actions: something "happens." You can use them with simple forms to talk about habits or routines, or progressive forms to talk about activities in progress.

I recycle all paper, plastic, and bottles. We're destroying the planet. The telephone is ringing.

Stative meanings: "states"

Some verbs connected with knowledge, emotion, or possession have stative meanings. They describe states: nothing "happens." You cannot use them with progressive forms.

I want a fairer system. I don't feel strongly about politics.

Common verbs with stative meanings:

- feelings: *hate, like, love, prefer, want.*
- thoughts: *believe, feel, know, think, understand.*
- possession: *belong, have, own.*
- senses: *feel, hear, see, smell, sound, taste.*
- appearance: *appear, look (like), seem.*

⚠ Some verbs can have both dynamic and stative meanings:

Rosie is having a great time at college. (have = dynamic meaning)

Brian has a beautiful house. (have = stative meaning)

Part 2: Future forms: (be) going to and present progressive

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I'm (am) going to work.	I'm not (am not) going to work.	Am I going to work?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
You/We/They're (are) going to work.	You/We/They're not (are not) going to work.	Are you/we/they going to work?	Yes, you/we/they are.	No, you/we/they aren't.
He/She/It's (is) going to work.	He/She/It isn't (is not) going to work.	Is he/she/it going to work?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.

You can use (be) going to to talk about your future intentions. You have made a decision about a future event and you are talking about that decision.



One of these days, I'm going to get in shape. He's going to tell me all about his vacation.

You can use the present progressive to talk about future arrangements. You have arranged a future event and you are talking about that arrangement.



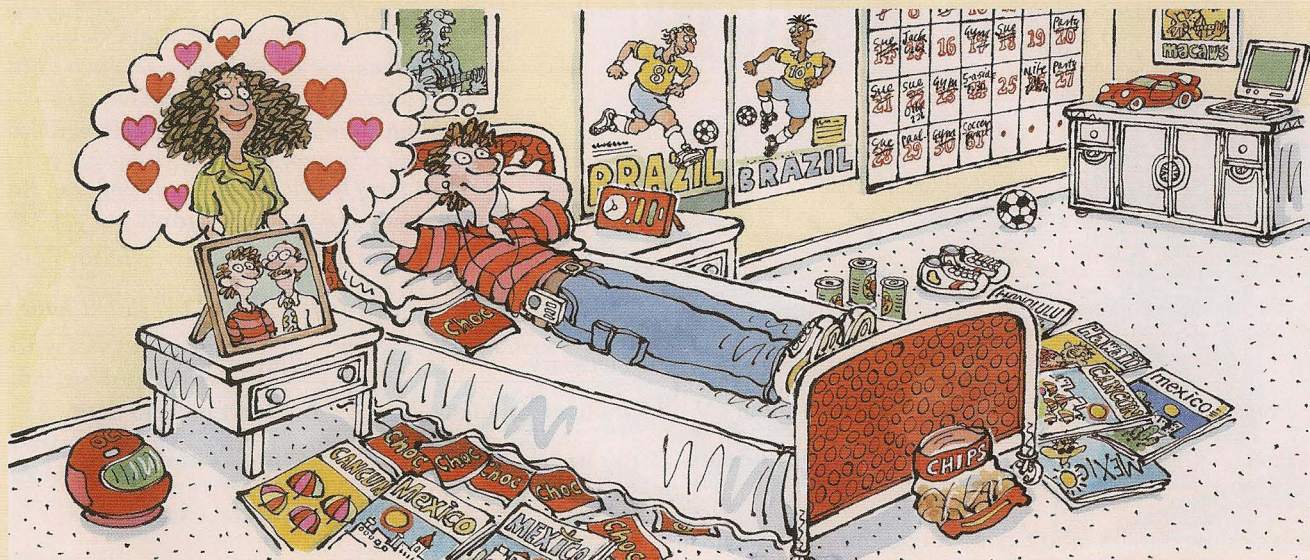
Are you doing anything on Thursday? We're meeting the President this afternoon at 2:00 p.m.

For present progressive verb forms, see page 132.

Unit 7 Exercises

Part 1

- 1 Look at the picture of Tom in his room. Complete the sentences with the present progressive or the simple present.



- | | |
|---|---|
| a) Tom (take) <i>is taking</i> a rest. | f) He (think) _____ Brazil is the best soccer team. |
| b) He (think) _____ about his girlfriend. | g) He (look) _____ like his father. |
| c) He (listen) _____ to music. | h) He (know) _____ a lot of people. |
| d) He (have) _____ a motorcycle. | i) He (plan) _____ a vacation. |
| e) He (love) _____ chocolate. | j) He (seem) _____ happy. |

- 2 Use the same dynamic or stative meanings of the verbs in Exercise 1 and write example sentences that are true for you.

a) *I'm taking a picture.*

Part 2

- 1 Complete these New Year resolutions with *going to* + a verb in the box.

change get give up ~~join~~ not eat not watch spend start

- | | | |
|---|----------------------|------------------------------|
| a) the Green Party
<i>I'm going to join the Green Party.</i> | c) a better job | f) so much TV |
| b) yoga classes | d) so much fast food | g) smoking |
| | e) my hairstyle | h) less time on the computer |

Which resolutions would be good for you?

- 2 Look at Jane's organizer. Complete the conversation.

Rick: Would you like to meet for coffee tomorrow morning?

Jane: I can't. (1) *I'm going to the dentist.*

Rick: What about later in the morning?

Jane: Sorry, but (2) _____.

Rick: OK. Are you free for lunch?

Jane: I'd love to, but (3) _____.

Rick: And the afternoon?

Jane: (4) _____ with Tim, and then at 4:30 (5) _____.

Rick: Dinner?

Jane: Look, I'm really sorry but from 7:30 to 9:30 (6) _____.

Rick: OK, OK. Another time ... By the way, who's Tim?

Write sentences describing any arrangements you have made for the next few days.

MAY 26

9:20a.m. Dentist

11:00a.m. Meet Mom in town

1:00p.m. Lunch with Vicky

3:00p.m. Tennis with Tim

4:30p.m. Pick up the children from school

7:30-9:30p.m. Drink with Tim

Unit 8 Permission and obligation (present and past). Advice

Part 1: *can/could* for permission; *have to / had to* for obligation

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. could work.	I/You/He, etc. couldn't (could not) work.	Could I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. could.	No, I/you/he, etc. couldn't.

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. had to work.	I/You/He, etc. didn't have to work.	Did I/you/he, etc. have to work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. did.	No, I/you/he, etc. didn't.

Permission: <i>can/could; can't/couldn't</i>			Obligation: <i>have to / don't have to; had to / didn't have to</i>	
	Permitted	Not permitted	Necessary	Not necessary
Present	You can do it.	You can't do it.	You have to do it.	You don't have to do it.
Past	You could do it.	You couldn't do it.	You had to do it.	You didn't have to do it.

You can use *can/could* to talk about permission. *could* is the past form of *can*.

When I was fourteen, I **could** stay out as long as I wanted.

Swiss women **couldn't** vote in elections until 1971.

You use *have to / had to* to talk about necessity or obligation. *had to* is the past form of *have to*.

I **had to** wear a uniform at school.

In the 1960s, you **didn't have to** wear a helmet on a motorcycle.

Part 2: *must* and *should* for advice

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. must work.	I/You/He, etc. mustn't (must not) work.	Must I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. must.	No, I/you/he, etc. mustn't.
I/You/He, etc. should work.	I/You/He, etc. shouldn't (should not) work.	Should I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. should.	No, I/you/he, etc. shouldn't.

You can use *must* and *should* to give advice. *must* is stronger than *should*.

You **must** lose weight (or you'll die)!

You **should** lose weight (because you'll feel much healthier).

Mustn't is usually used only in writing. We usually use **can't** instead of **mustn't**. (See above.)

You **mustn't** smoke in a gas station. = You **can't** smoke in a gas station.

Unit 8 Exercises

Part 1

1 Write the following sentences in the negative.

When I was fourteen, ...

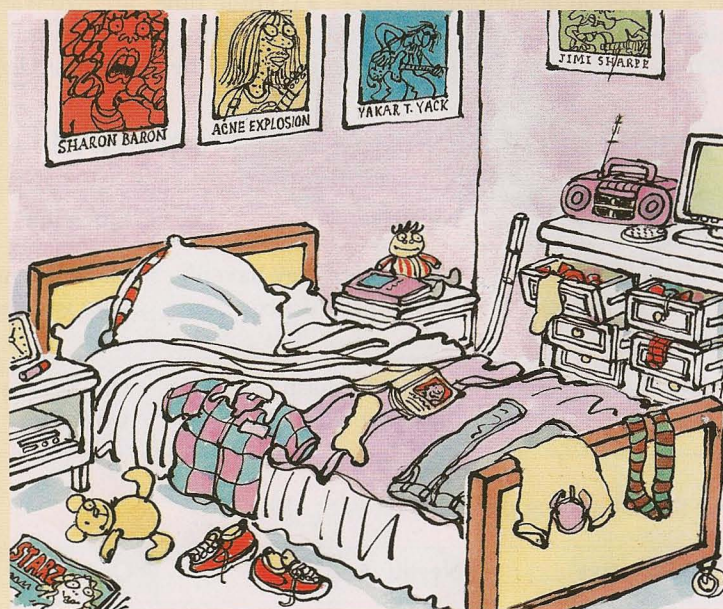
- I had to make my bed every morning.
I didn't have to make my bed every morning.
- I could wear whatever I wanted.
I couldn't wear whatever I wanted.
- I had to keep my room neat and clean.
- I had to help my parents at home.
- I had to travel everywhere by bicycle.
- I could invite friends home on weekends.
- I could stay out after 10:00 p.m.
- I could play my music as loud as I wanted.

Check (✓) the affirmative or negative sentences that are true for you.

2 Write questions with *you* for the sentences in Exercise 1.

- Did you have to make your bed every morning?*

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.



Part 2

1 Complete the sentences. Use an appropriate form of *should* or *must*.

- You *should* go home early. You look very tired.
- It's only a cough, but you *must* take this medicine four times a day.
- Mom, you *must* kiss me in front of my friends. It's embarrassing.
- David, you *must* clean your room immediately!
- I think young people *should* show more respect to their elders.
- You *must* go out with John. He's not good enough for you.
- This is a security announcement. All passengers *must* keep their bags with them at all times!



2 Who said it? Match sentences (a–g) with a person in the box.

a best friend	~~a co-worker~~	a doctor	a parent
a teenage boy	an airport announcer	an old man	

- a co-worker*

Unit 9 *for* and *since*. Present perfect: simple and progressive

for and *since*

for + "a period of time" and *since* + "a point in time" are two ways of saying the same thing.

You use *for* when you give the **length** of the time: *for a few days* / *for three years* / *for ages*.

You use *since* when you give the **beginning** of the time: *since Monday* / *since I left school* / *since 1997*.

Present perfect: simple and progressive

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/We/ They've (have) worked.	I/You/We/They haven't (have not) worked.	Have I/you/we/ they worked?	Yes, I/you/we/they have.	No, I/you/we/they haven't.
He/She/It's (has) worked.	He/She/It hasn't (has not) worked.	Has he/she/it worked?	Yes, he/she/it has.	No, he/she/it hasn't.

See the list of irregular verbs on page 159.

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/We/ They've (have) <i>been working</i> .	I/You/We/They haven't (have not) <i>been working</i> .	Have I/you/ we/they <i>been</i> working?	Yes, I/you/we/they have.	No, I/you/we/they haven't.
He/She/It's (has) <i>been working</i> .	He/She/It hasn't (has not) <i>been working</i> .	Has he/she/it <i>been working</i> ?	Yes, he/she/it has.	No, he/she/it hasn't.

You usually use the present perfect progressive to describe the duration of a continuous or repeated action from a point in the past up to now.

We've been studying Spanish for ten years.

She's been going to the same hairdresser since the 1990s.



Stative meanings

You don't use the present perfect progressive for verbs with stative meanings. Use the simple form.

She's known Tom since they were at school. (NOT *She's been knowing ...*)

They've had the same computer since 2003. (NOT *They've been having ...*)

See the list of common verbs with stative meanings on page 138.

Note: You can also use the simple form to indicate unchanging, "permanent" situations.

Compare:

I've been living here since the summer.

I've lived here all my life.

Unit 9 Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

- I've had these soccer cleats *for* fifteen years.
- I've had this hairstyle _____ ages.
- I've had this pen _____ my last birthday.
- I've had this bag _____ a long time.
- I've had the same sandals _____ last summer.
- I've had the same ring tone on my cell phone _____ I bought it.
- I've had my driver's license _____ I was eighteen.
- I've had a passport _____ five or six years.

Rewrite the sentences so they are true for you.



2 Write the *ing*-form and the past participle for each of these verbs.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| a) steal <i>stealing, stolen</i> | h) get |
| b) grow | i) tell |
| c) sell | j) cost |
| d) drive | k) hear |
| e) send | l) lose |
| f) pay | m) build |
| g) feel | n) lend |

3 Look at the information. Use the underlined verb to write a sentence in the simple or progressive form of the present perfect.

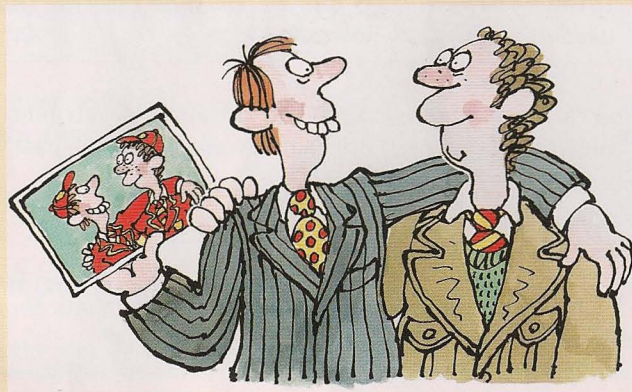
- We are married. We got married in 2007.
We've been married since 2007.
- I'm reading the newspaper. I started reading half an hour ago.
I've been reading the newspaper for half an hour.
- He likes jazz. He got interested in jazz when he was at college.
- She's learning to swim. She started lessons in September.
- She works in a store. She got the job last May.
- They live together. They moved in together last summer.
- I play the guitar. I started playing when I was eight.
- We have a motorcycle. We bought it three years ago.

Use the same underlined verbs to write present perfect sentences about yourself.

4 Write questions using *How long ...?* Use the progressive form where possible.

- know / best friend?
How long have you known your best friend?
- wear / the same sunglasses?
- go / to the same dentist?
- listen to / the same kind of music?
- be / in the same job?
- drive / the same car?
- live / in the same house?
- do your shopping / in the same grocery store?

Write answers to the questions.



Unit 10 *will* (future). Future time clauses. *used to*

Part 1: *will* (future). Future time clauses

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. I'll (will) work.	I/You/He, etc. won't (will not) work.	Will I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. will.	No, I/you/he, etc. won't.

will is a modal verb. You can use *will* to talk about the future when there is no present plan, intention, or arrangement.

Compare:

What are you doing / going to do this weekend? (= I think you have plans, intentions, or arrangements.)

What will you do this weekend? (= I don't think you know.)

Future time clauses

When you are talking about the future, you use a future form in the main clause but you use a present tense in the subordinate clauses after *when*, *if*, *as soon as*, *before*, *after*, etc.

Two different sentence formations are possible.

Conjunction	Subordinate clause	Main clause
When	he gets home,	he's going to take a shower.
If	it rains tomorrow,	we'll play inside.

Main clause	Conjunction	Subordinate clause
He's going to take a shower	when	he gets home.
We'll play inside	if	it rains tomorrow.

Part 2: *used to*

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. used to work.	I/You/He, etc. didn't use to work.	Did I/you/he, etc. use to work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. did.	No, I/you/he, etc. didn't.

You can use *used to* + infinitive to talk about past habits (repeated actions in the past) or past states. It describes things that were true in the past, but are probably not true now.

I used to go to school by bus.

I didn't use to enjoy English lessons.

What kind of car did you use to have?

 It isn't possible to use *used to* + infinitive to talk about a single action in the past. You use the simple past.

One weekend, we went to Dallas. (NOT One weekend, we used to go to Dallas.)

Unit 10 Exercises

Part 1

1 Underline the most appropriate future form.

- a) I've forgotten my dictionary. Don't worry: I'll lend / I won't lend you mine.
- b) If you don't hurry up, you'll be / you won't be in time for your train.
- c) This is a great gift. Dom will love / Dom won't love it!
- d) I think Anna will get / Anna won't get the job. She's the best person for it.
- e) We've got a problem with the car. We'll arrive / We won't arrive before 11:00 p.m.
- f) They'll play / They won't play outside if the weather is bad.

2 Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- a) As soon as the class (finish) *finishes*, Sue's going to buy a lottery ticket.
- b) Terry will get married when he (meet) _____ the right woman.
- c) As soon as Rob (get home) _____ this evening, he's going to do his homework.
- d) If it (rain) _____ tomorrow, Jenny will probably drive to class.
- e) If Dana (go) _____ abroad this summer, she'll probably go to England.
- f) Tom will probably get a well-paid job when he (finish) _____ college.

Work with a partner. Replace the names with names of people in the class. How many true statements can you make?

Part 2

1 Complete the conversation with the affirmative, negative, and question forms of *used to*.

- A: What (1 your dad do) *did your dad use to do* before he left his job?
B: He (2 be) _____ a corporate lawyer. He worked in Chicago for a big company.
A: (3 he enjoy) _____ his job?
B: Well, he (4 say) _____ he found it a little bit boring. And he (5 not like) _____ traveling to Chicago every day. You know, he (6 leave) _____ the house at 6:00 every morning and he (7 not arrive) _____ home before 7:30 p.m. I remember he (8 get) _____ very tired.
A: (9 your dad earn) _____ a lot of money?
B: Oh, I guess he did. We (10 have) _____ really nice vacations in the Caribbean and we often (11 eat out) _____ in expensive restaurants. Money was never a problem.
A: So what happened?
B: I don't know exactly. He always (12 tell) _____ me he wanted to "smell the flowers." So last year, he left the company and bought a small organic farm.
A: What's life on the farm like?
B: It's OK – a little bit boring, but Dad's really happy.



What job did you use to want to do when you were a child? Discuss with a partner.

2 Look at the following statements. Where possible, replace the simple past verb forms with *used to* or *didn't use to*.

- a) I was born in a hospital.
- b) As a child, I ~~lived~~ *used to live* in a small town.
- c) I shared a room with my brother/sister.
- d) I had a pet mouse named Jerry.
- e) I watched Cartoon Network on TV every day.
- f) My parents gave me an allowance.
- g) We went to Disneyland once as a special treat.
- h) I didn't enjoy English lessons at school.

3 How many of the statements in Exercise 1 were true for you as a child? Rewrite the sentences so that they are all true for you. Compare your sentences with your partner.

Unit 11 Defining relative clauses. Unreal conditionals

Part 1: Defining relative clauses

A relative clause can define or identify the thing or person introduced in the main clause.

It comes immediately after the person or thing it is describing.

A cheetah is an animal *that can run 100 kilometers an hour.*

The woman *who does my hair* is named Marcia.

The relative pronoun (*that, which, who*) becomes the subject of the verb in the relative clause.

You use *that* (or *which*) for things, and *who* (or *that*) for people.

subject verb
People who come from Rio de Janeiro are called Cariocas.

subject verb
A diner is a place that serves food.

Part 2: Unreal conditionals

You can use a conditional sentence to talk about a present (or future) situation that is imaginary or not probable. These sentences are usually called "unreal conditionals."

They have two clauses: an *if*-clause and a main clause.

if-clause

To show that a present (or future) situation is imaginary, you use a past tense.

Real situation	Imaginary situation
I am not an animal.	If I was/were an animal, ...
I live in an apartment.	If I lived in an igloo, ...

Note: *If I/he/she/it were* is more formal than *If I/he/she/it was*. You always use *were* in the fixed expression *If I were you, ...*

Main clause

You usually use *would* + infinitive in the main clause.

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. ' d (would) work.	I/You/He, etc. wouldn't (would not) work.	Would I/you/he, etc. work?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. would.	No, I/you/he, etc. wouldn't.

<i>if</i> -clause	Main clause
If I had \$1 million,	I'd travel around the world.
If I could live anywhere,	I'd choose somewhere hot.

Unit 11 Exercises

Part 1

- 1 Complete these quotations by inserting *who* or *that* in the correct position. In each case, the relative clause describes the underlined word.
- a) A camel is a horse *that* has been designed by a committee. (Alec Issigonis – designer of the Mini)
 - b) Everybody knows how to raise children – except the people have them. (P.J. O'Rourke – US humorist)
 - c) How can you govern a country has 246 varieties of cheese? (Charles de Gaulle – French president)
 - d) Go on, get out! Last words are for fools haven't said enough. (Karl Marx, on his deathbed)
 - e) Life is something happens when you can't get to sleep. (Fran Lebowitz – US humorist)
 - f) A bank is a place will lend you money if you can prove you don't need it. (Bob Hope – US humorist)
 - g) Women want to be equal with men don't have ambition. (Timothy Leary – US philosopher)
 - h) People get nostalgic about childhood were obviously never children. (Bill Watterson – US humorist)

Which quotation do you like best? Discuss with a partner.

- 2 Write sentences that define the underlined words. Use the information in parentheses.

- a) Most of the people speak perfect English. (They work with me.)
Most of the people who work with me speak perfect English.
- b) People make me angry. (They complain all the time.)
- c) I've met lots of people. (They have the same name as me.)
- d) We should ban cars. (They use too much gas.)
- e) I think dictionaries are useless. (They don't give good examples.)
- f) The family has a dog and a cat. (They live next door.)

Are any of these sentences true for you?

Part 2

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms to describe imaginary situations.

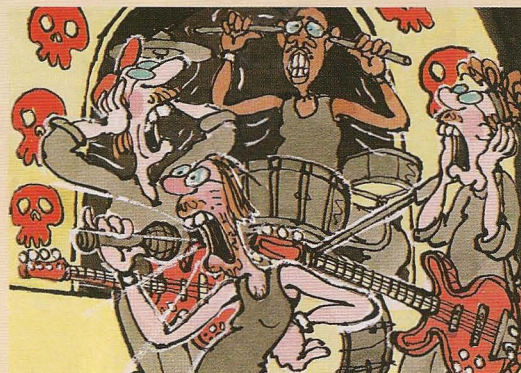
- a) If I (can) *could* sing, I (join) *'d join* a rock band.
- b) If I (win) _____ the lottery, I (give) _____ half the money to charity.
- c) If I (be) _____ more organized, I (not be) _____ late for everything.
- d) If I (have) _____ more time, I (read) _____ more.
- e) If I (not work) _____ so hard, I (not be) _____ so tired.
- f) If I (lose) _____ my job, I (have to) _____ sell my car.

Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

- 2 Complete at least five of these sentences in an appropriate way.

- a) If I met Brad Pitt, ...
- b) If I could order any food I wanted, ...
- c) If I saw a lion, ...
- d) If I had a Ferrari, ...
- e) If I didn't have to work, ...
- f) If I could speak English perfectly, ...
- g) If there were twenty-five hours in the day, ...
- h) If money was no problem, ...
- i) If I could fly, ...
- j) If today was the last day of my life, ...

Compare your sentences with your partner.



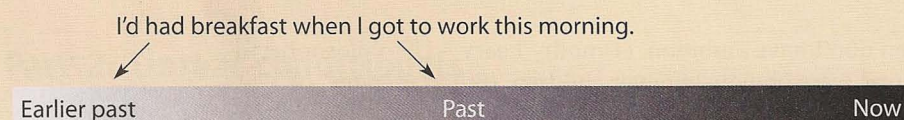
Unit 12 Past perfect. Passives

Part 1: Past perfect

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
I/You/He, etc. 'd (had) worked.	I/You/He, etc. hadn't (had not) worked.	Had I/you/he, etc. worked?	Yes, I/you/he, etc. had.	No, I/you/he, etc. hadn't.

See the list of irregular verbs on page 159.

You use the past perfect when you are talking about the past and you want to refer to an earlier past time. The past perfect clearly shows that one past event happened earlier than other past events.



Part 2: Passives

In passive sentences, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb.

Active

subject **verb** **object**
Somebody built the first Ice Hotel in 1990.

Passive

subject **verb**
The first Ice Hotel was built in 1990.

You can use passive verbs to talk about actions when it doesn't matter (or you don't know) who performed them.

My shoes were designed in Italy.

All the furniture is made of ice.

Affirmative	Negative	Question	Short answer Yes	Short answer No
They're made in China.	They aren't made in China.	Are they made in China?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.
It was built here.	It wasn't built here.	Was it built here?	Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.

Unit 12 Exercises

Part 1

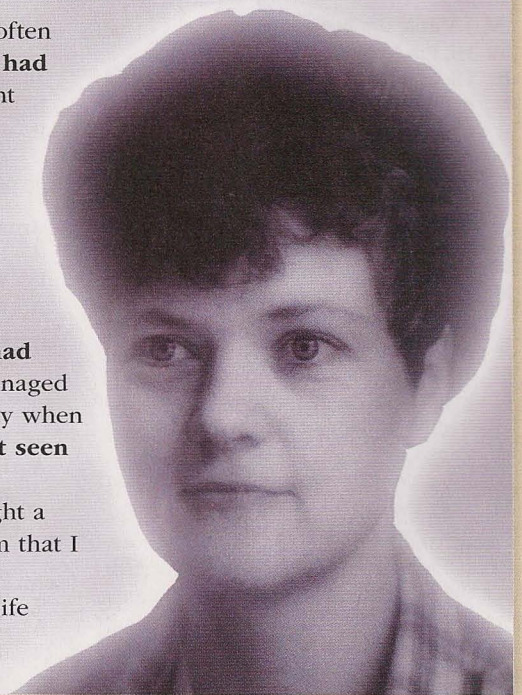
- 1 Read this story about reincarnation. Choose the correct tense – simple past or past perfect – for the verbs (1–12).

Jenny Cockell was sure that she (1) **lived** / **had lived** before. She often dreamed about Mary Sutton, a young Irish woman who (2) **died** / **had died** more than twenty years before Jenny was born. Jenny thought that her dreams (3) **were** / **had been** real memories and that she (4) **was** / **had been** Mary in a previous life.

In her dreams, she saw the house in Ireland where Mary and her family (5) **lived** / **had lived**. As her visions continued and became more detailed, Jenny (6) **realized** / **had realized** that Mary (7) **died** / **had died** in 1930 and that her children could still be alive. She decided to travel to Ireland and find out.

In Ireland, Jenny quickly found the house that she (8) **saw** / **had seen** in her dreams. Then, after a few more investigations, she managed to contact Mary Sutton's oldest son, Sonny. It was an emotional day when Jenny (9) **met** / **had met** the son who she (10) **didn't see** / **hadn't seen** for fifty years. "I talked to him about our family life together. I (11) **reminded** / **had reminded** him of the day when he had caught a rabbit. There were lots of other memories, and they convinced him that I (12) **was** / **had been** his mother in a previous life."

Jenny Cockell has written the story of her extraordinary past life experiences in a book entitled *Yesterday's Children*.



- 2 Did Sonny think that Jenny was his mother? What do you think?

Part 2

- 1 Write passive sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

- | | |
|--|--|
| a) This school (open) _____ in the 1990s.
<i>This school was opened in the 1990s.</i> | d) Our classroom (paint) _____ recently. |
| b) My car (park) _____ outside my house every day. | e) My name (pronounce) _____ differently in English. |
| c) My house (clean) _____ once a week. | f) My watch (make) _____ in Switzerland. |

Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you.

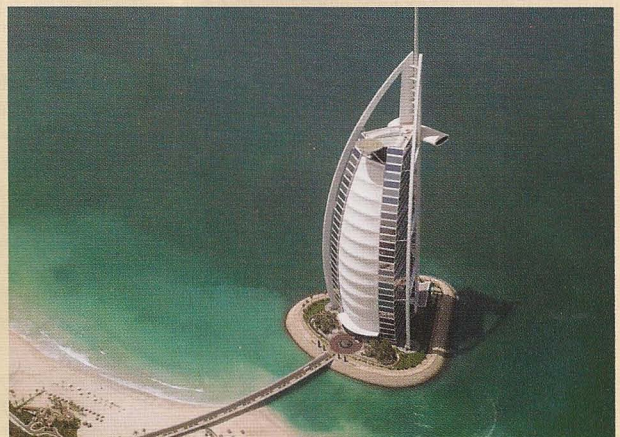
- 2 Write questions to ask your partner with the sentences in Exercise 1.

- a) *Was this school opened in the 1990s?*

Ask your partner the questions.

- 3 Complete the information about Burj al Arab. Choose the correct passive structures for the verbs in parentheses.

The world's tallest hotel (1 call) *is called* Burj al Arab or "Tower of the Arabs." It (2 build) _____ on an artificial island and (3 connect) _____ to the mainland at Jumeirah, Dubai, by a private bridge. Building work (4 start) _____ in 1994 and (5 complete) _____ three years later. The hotel (6 design) _____ to look like the sail of an Arab sailing ship. Burj al Arab (7 consider) _____ to be the world's only seven-star hotel and has become an iconic structure symbolizing modern Dubai.



Audioscript

Unit 1

1.02

(M = Maria; B = Benjamin)

M: Hi, I'm Maria.

B: Hi, Maria. My name's Benjamin, but nobody calls me Benjamin. Well, my parents do, but my friends call me Ben.

M: Ben – that's nice.

B: Thanks. Actually, my old friends call me Tree.

M: Tree? Why?

B: Well, as you can see, I'm very tall.

M: Oh, ha-ha. ... My friends call me lots of different names.

B: Really?

M: Yes. My mom's Mexican and my dad's English, so I've got English and Mexican friends, and they call me different things.

B: What do your Mexican friends call you?

M: They use my full name – Anna-Maria.

B: And your English friends?

M: They just call me Maria. Some of them call me Mimi.

B: Mimi! That's cute!

M: Well, it could be worse. My brother calls me Baby, because I'm the youngest in the family.

B: That's not so bad – my sisters call me Big Ben.

M: Ha-ha. Oh, no!

1.07

John Carter is my best friend. We met when we were five years old, because our parents were friends and we went to the same school. He lives in Los Angeles now – he's a teacher at a high school there. So I only see him in the summer when he comes home to visit his family. Of course, we stay in touch by email and phone. He's important to me because he knows me so well. When I'm feeling down or when I need to talk to somebody, I can always call him. Recently, I had girlfriend problems and he was great. I'd say his best quality is that he's a really good listener. He just lets you talk and he listens. But he isn't perfect! He's always late for everything and he never says sorry. Never! One day last summer, we arranged to meet at seven o'clock to play baseball, and he arrived at nine thirty! It was almost dark! Oh well, nobody's perfect, are they? Last time I saw him was on my birthday, and we had a great time. We always have a great time.

Unit 2

1.12

Paulo

(I = Interviewer; P = Paulo)

I: Do you like your city?

P: Oh, yes, I feel lucky to be living in a city that's so big and exciting.

I: What's the architecture like?

P: A mixture of old and new. There are too many high-rise buildings in some parts of the city. But there are plenty of cheap restaurants and interesting cafés and bars. And the nightlife is great. We also have the most famous beach in the world – Copacabana Beach.

I: Ah. What's the weather like?

P: It's great most of the time. The only time I don't like Rio very much is in the summer: it's too hot and humid.

Armelle

(I = Interviewer; A = Armelle)

I: Where do you live?

A: Well, I live in a small village with my parents. My grandparents live here too, and my aunts and uncles. In fact, I think I'm related to about fifty percent of the people in my village.

I: What's your village like?

A: It's very pretty. The countryside is beautiful, and the air is fresh and clean. But at night it's too quiet. I find it so dull and boring here – there aren't any discos or movie theaters.

I: What are the people like?

A: Oh, they're nice and really friendly, but there aren't many young people. I want to go and live in the city. Soon.

Luigi

(I = Interviewer; L = Luigi)

I: What do you think of your city?

L: It is a very special place. It's such a romantic city.

I: What's it like downtown?

L: The buildings are beautiful, and we have San Marco, one of the most famous churches in the world. The Piazza San Marco is wonderful, and during carnival in February, Venice is the best place in the world to be.

I: Do you like living here?

L: No, I really hate living here. It's horrible. There are too many tourists everywhere. It gets very noisy and crowded.

I: Oh, no. What are the stores like?

L: Well, because of the tourists the stores are too expensive, and the canals are so dirty and polluted. My city is too small for all these people. Why don't they leave us in peace?

1.14

The best place I've ever visited is Buenos Aires, the capital of Argentina. It's a crazy city, but I really love it.

The first time I went there was on my summer vacation. It was the year before I went to college. So I was young and excited, and it was my first time in South America.

I flew there on my own, but I went to stay with friends. Of course, I visited all the tourist places – the Colón Theater, the Plaza de Mayo, La Boca, and my friends took me to watch a tango show. That was great. I even took some tango lessons, but I'm not very good.

I also went out dancing a lot – Buenos Aires' nightlife is fantastic. The streets are crowded at three o'clock in the morning with people going to restaurants and discos. The discos are open until six or seven o'clock in the morning – in fact, Buenos Aires never sleeps!

Now I go back to Buenos Aires as often as possible. I've been there three times, and last year I went there for New Year's.

What I particularly like about Buenos Aires are the people. Argentinian people are very special. They're loud, energetic, and a lot of fun. I love them!

Unit 3

1.17

(B = Betty; W = Walt)

B: We first met fifty years ago.

W: I joined the Navy and I went to Annapolis, Maryland, for my training. On the first day I went to the canteen, and this little lady was serving lunch.

B: Yes, I was. I liked him so I gave him extra fries.

W: Anyway, we started talking. Then, one night, there was a party.

B: I said to Walt, "I'll be your girl tonight," and that was it.

W: Yes, we dated for three wonderful months.

B: We did.

W: Then we both moved to different places. At first we wrote to each other. We wrote twice a week.

B: Yes, but then we stopped. I don't know why. But we lost touch with each other. Then we got married to other people. I had two children, and Walt had a daughter.

W: That's right. I was married for forty-eight years, and then my wife died.

B: And I got divorced after thirty years of marriage.

W: So we were both single again.

B: And one day, my grandson took me to Annapolis for the day. I visited all the old places and I thought about Walt. I wanted to find him.

W: She didn't even know whether I was alive.

B: No, I didn't. So I wrote a letter to the editor of the local newspaper.

W: I have a cousin in Annapolis. She doesn't usually buy the newspaper, but on that day she did. She bought the paper and she saw the letter. And she realized that Betty was looking for me.

B: He called me. I nearly had a heart attack. I said, "Is that my Walt?" I was so happy.

W: We met soon after that. We realized we were still in love and we moved in together a few months later.

B: We got married last summer. I didn't want to lose him again!

1.20

(I = Introducer; BB = Bobby Brown;
R = Rosie; D = Dave)

- I: It's time for our popular competition *Get Personal*, with your host, Bobby Brown.
- BB: Good evening and welcome to this week's *Get Personal*. Let's meet our first couple, Rosie and Dave. As you know, Rosie and Dave are in separate studios – Rosie can't hear Dave, and Dave has no idea what Rosie is saying. But they can both hear me. OK, are you ready to play *Get Personal*?
- R&D: Yes, Bobby.
- BB: OK, we'll start with you, Rosie. We want you to remember exactly what was going on when you first met Dave. OK?
- R: OK, Bobby.
- BB: Now, Rosie, how did you first meet Dave?
- R: Well, I was working as a nurse, and Dave was my patient. He came into the hospital for an operation.
- BB: OK, Rosie. I want you to think about the moment when you first met. What time of day was it?
- R: Um, I was working nights that week. So early evening.
- BB: Uh-huh. And how was the weather?
- R: I think it was raining. Yes, it was raining when I arrived at work.
- BB: What were you both wearing when you saw each other for the first time?
- R: Now that's easy. I was wearing my nurse's uniform, and he was wearing pajamas. Blue pajamas. Or were they green? No, blue.
- BB: Finally, who spoke first and what did he or she say?
- R: Dave spoke first. In fact he shouted at me. He said, "Nurse, I'm going to throw up."
- BB: Well, that's *very* romantic! Thank you, Rosie.

1.21

- (BB = Bobby Brown; R = Rosie; D = Dave)
- BB: Now, Dave, it's your turn. Where and how did you first meet?
- D: Well, I went into the hospital for an operation, and Rosie was working there as a nurse.
- BB: What time of day was it?
- D: Oh, I don't know. Lunchtime? No, hold on, it was later than that. Early evening.
- BB: How was the weather?
- D: It was summer, so I guess the sun was shining.
- BB: What were you both wearing when you saw each other for the first time?
- D: Rosie was wearing her nurse's uniform and she was also wearing nice perfume. I was wearing my favorite blue pajamas.
- BB: Finally, Dave, who spoke first and what did he or she say?
- D: Rosie spoke first. She said, "How are you feeling?" And I think I said, "I feel terrible."

1.25

(T = Tim; A = Anna)

- T: Excuse me. Do you know what time we arrive in Atlanta?
- A: Yes, I think we get there at about 2:30.
- T: Thanks. I see you're reading *Pride and Prejudice*. Are you enjoying it?
- A: Yes, I am.
- T: I didn't like the movie.
- A: Oh, I did. I thought it was great. I really like Keira Knightley.
- T: Oh, so do I. I think she's really good in *Pirates of the Caribbean*.
- A: Me, too. I love that movie. Johnny Depp's fantastic.
- T: I know. I'm going to see his new movie tomorrow night.
- A: Really? So am I. Where are you going to see it?
- T: At the AMC Phipps Plaza.
- A: Me, too!
- T: Oh, that's great. I don't know what time it starts.
- A: No, neither do I. But my husband has the tickets, so he knows.
- T: Oh. That's good.

1.26

- a) I didn't like the movie. Neither did I. Me, neither. Oh, I did.
- b) I really like Keira Knightley. So do I. Me, too. Oh, I don't.
- c) I think she's really good. So do I. Me, too. Oh, I don't.
- d) I'm going to see Johnny Depp's new movie. So am I. Me, too. Oh, I'm not.
- e) I don't know what time it starts. Neither do I. Me, neither. Oh, I do.

Review A

1.29

- (C = Carol; J = Jennifer)
- C: OK, so who's that in this picture, Jennifer?
- J: Oh, that's my friend, Matt.
- C: Friend? Really?
- J: OK, boyfriend!
- C: Hmm. Where did you meet him?
- J: At college in California – about five years ago.
- C: Oh, OK.
- J: Yeah. I didn't actually like him at first. And I already had a boyfriend. But one day, a group of us spent the day together at the beach. We went swimming and talked and I discovered that Matt was a very interesting person and he really liked traveling.
- C: You like traveling too, don't you?
- J: Yes, I love it. Anyway, we talked all evening, and after that we became really good friends. But after college he went back home to Australia – he's Australian – and I stayed here.
- C: Oh, no!
- J: Then Matt and I started emailing and calling each other a lot because we wanted to go scuba diving in Egypt with friends.
- C: Ah. In the Red Sea?
- J: That's right. Anyway, I saw Matt in Egypt with all our friends. It was a lot

of fun. Then, last summer, I went to Australia to visit him. I asked him to come back to the USA with me, and he did.

C: Really? That's wonderful.

J: Yes, we're good together. In fact, we're planning a trip to the Bahamas right now ... Hey, life is good!

Unit 4

1.33

The last gift I bought was for my sister. It was her birthday. In fact, it was her thirtieth birthday. Thirty isn't very old, but she was pretty upset. She liked being in her twenties, and she thought thirty was really old. Anyway, I didn't know what to get her, so I went on the internet to find something. I didn't have any ideas, but I wanted something special. Eventually, I found a really good present. I thought it was unusual, and just perfect for her – it was a foot spa. My sister's a teacher and she stands up all day, so a foot spa is great for relaxing in the evening. It was expensive – about \$50 – but she's my sister, and thirty is a special birthday. I bought a nice card and wrote a funny message in it – I put, "Now that you're thirty, you're too old to die young!" Ha-ha. On her birthday, I gave her the gift, but unfortunately she didn't like it – at all. She said that a foot spa is a gift for a grandmother, not for a young woman. I was really surprised – I'd love a foot spa. And then, when she read the card, she cried! What a disaster.

1.34

(I = Interviewer, C = Conor, J = Jim)

- I: OK. Question one. Do you mind going to the shopping mall?
- C: Not really. But after about an hour, I want to go home.
- J: Actually, I can't stand going to the mall. My girlfriend knows this, so she usually chooses to go without me.
- I: OK. Um, let's see. Question two. What kind of stores do you enjoy going into?
- C: Bookstores. I spend a lot of time reading book reviews so I always have a list of books I'd like to buy.
- J: I enjoy looking at electronic equipment but I can't afford to buy it. It's usually way too expensive.
- I: OK. Question three. Are there any kinds of stores you hate going into?
- C: I hate grocery stores. I usually forget to buy the things I went there for, so I avoid going into them. Fortunately, I can do most of my food shopping online.
- J: I refuse to go into shoe stores with my girlfriend. She tries on ten pairs and then decides to buy the first pair.
- I: OK. Last question. Question four. Do you enjoy buying clothes for yourself?
- C: Not really. I only go into a clothing store when I need to buy a new shirt or something. For me, shopping is a necessity, not a pleasure.
- J: I love having new clothes, but I never manage to find time to go shopping.

1.35

Keiko is wearing a black silk vest, a white cotton shirt, black woolen pants, and black leather boots.

Robert is wearing a plain green linen top, a red cotton skirt, a light green silk scarf around his head, gold earrings, a gold necklace, and yellow leather sandals.

1.36

- a) a striped woolen hat
- b) patterned silk ties
- c) a pinstriped jacket
- d) a checked shirt

Unit 5

2.02

When I was in high school, we did sports every Wednesday afternoon. Two hours, from 1:30 to 3:30. Wednesdays were my worst day of the week. I hated doing sports at school. In summer we did swimming and tennis, and in winter we did lacrosse. I really, really hated lacrosse. It was always cold when we played lacrosse, but we wore shorts! Horrible, gray shorts. My legs were very thin and they were so cold that they turned blue. I was always happy when it was raining or snowing – then we stayed inside and did dancing. I loved that.

At my school we had a sports field, tennis courts, and a swimming pool. I love swimming, but the swimming pool wasn't heated so it was freezing.

I didn't like my gym teacher, and she didn't like me. Her name was Ms. Rockham. We called her Rocky. She looked like a boxer, and she had a very loud voice. She loved lacrosse. In fact, I think she played for the national lacrosse team.

Of course, I didn't play for the school lacrosse team, but I loved dancing so much that I joined a dance club after school. My best sports moment was when my dance club won a competition for disco dancing. Rocky didn't think that dancing was a real sport, but I disagree. Dancing kept me in shape, and I didn't have to wear gray shorts.

2.03

David Beckham is the oldest. He was born in 1975. Thierry Henry is next. He was born in 1977. After that, it's Fernando Alonso – born in July 1981. Then, Roger Federer, a few days later, in August 1981. Cristiano Ronaldo was born in 1985, and Rafael Nadal is the youngest. He was born in 1986.

2.04

(MD = Marketing Director; AE = Advertising Executive)

MD: OK, what are we looking for exactly?
AE: We're looking for the new face of "Iso-tonic," the new energy drink.

MD: Yes, I know ... but what kind of face are we looking for?

AE: Ah, well, we need a sports star. Probably a man. Someone good-looking and healthy.

MD: Good. Do we have any ideas?

AE: Yes, we're thinking of David Beckham

or Thierry Henry.

MD: Hmm, Beckham is more famous than Henry ...

AE: Hmm. But he isn't as interesting.

MD: Are they the same age?

AE: Um, I think Beckham is a little bit older than Henry.

MD: Hmm. I think we need a younger man.

AE: How about Fernando Alonso?

MD: Who's he?

AE: He's a Formula One champion – he's young, successful ...

MD: But Formula One is too dangerous. We want this man to be the face of "Iso-tonic" for a few years. How about tennis? Federer, Nadal ...?

AE: Hmm. Nadal isn't as successful as Federer.

MD: No, but Nadal's much younger than Federer, so he could be more successful in the future.

AE: Hmm.

MD: OK, who's your favorite sports star?

AE: Oh, Cristiano Ronaldo. I think he's the best-looking, most interesting, most successful sportsman in the world.

MD: Well, let's use him then. Perfect. I want you to get in touch with him immediately.

2.05

- a) At 6,960 meters, Mount Aconcagua is much higher than Mount McKinley, which is 6,194 meters.
- b) Surprisingly, London isn't as wet as Rome. The annual average in London is 594 millimeters, whereas in Rome the annual average is 749 millimeters.
- c) The US Army is much smaller than the North Korean Army. There are 524,900 US soldiers compared to over one million North Koreans.
- d) Heathrow Airport in London is a little bit busier than Los Angeles International Airport. In one year, Heathrow serves 51,368,000 passengers, and Los Angeles serves 51,030,000.
- e) Hawaii isn't as big as Cuba. Hawaii is 10,500 square kilometers, but Cuba is 114,530.
- f) Big Ben is a little bit taller than the Statue of Liberty. Big Ben is 96 meters tall, and the Statue of Liberty is 93 meters tall.

2.06

- a) It's as light as a feather.
- b) He's as free as a bird.
- c) They're as good as gold.
- d) She's as pretty as a picture.
- e) It's as solid as a rock.
- f) It's as old as the hills.

2.07

Three quarters.
Point two five.
Point three three.
One and a half.
An eighth.
A quarter.
One point five.
Point one two five.
A third.
Point seven five.

2.08

- a) Two hundred and forty-nine kilometers an hour
- b) Forty-two point one nine five kilometers
- c) Eight point two percent
- d) Six million, one hundred and eighty-eight thousand dollars
- e) Thirty-two–nil

2.09

(P = Presenter; A = Avril)

P: We all know the expression "laughter is the best medicine." But a recent study shows that adults don't laugh enough. The study shows that young children laugh up to four hundred times a day, while adults only laugh seventeen times a day. According to medical research, fifteen to twenty minutes of laughter a day really does keep the doctor away. Well, now you can join one of the laughter clubs to get your regular twenty minutes of laughter. It sounds funny, and it even looks a little funny, but this is a laughter club. Avril is the teacher here. Avril, how did the laughter clubs start?

A: They started in India eleven years ago. Dr. Kataria started a club in Mumbai, and now there are hundreds of laughter clubs all over the world. In India, people are very serious about the benefits of laughter.

P: And what are the benefits of laughter?

A: When you laugh, you release happy chemicals – endorphins. This can reduce the effects of stress and you feel more relaxed. Laughter boosts the immune system and relaxes the mind. Also, laughing is good for the heart and good for the lungs.

P: What happens in a laughter club? What exactly do you do?

A: We just laugh.

P: Do you listen to funny stories?

A: Oh, no. We don't need anything to make us laugh. We do exercises, and when you start laughing, you can't stop.

P: What kind of exercises?

A: Well, we start the class with a laughing exercise called Ho Ho Ha Ha Ha. After that, we do different kinds of laughing. There's "social laughter" ... silent laughter ... and the loud, explosive laugh ... which exercises the lungs.

2.10

a)

(P = Paul; S = Selma)

P: OK, are you ready?

S: Yes.

P: Stand up on the board.

S: OK. Ohhhh!

P: Ha-ha-ha!

S: Don't be mean.

P: Oh, sorry. OK. Try again. Good! Great. Hold on. Don't let go.

S: Ohhhh! It's too difficult. I can't do it.

P: Don't be silly. Of course you can do it. Be patient. Come on, try again.

S: I look stupid.

P: Don't worry. Everyone looks stupid the first time. Now, stand up on the board.

That's it. Be careful! Good. Now, don't go too fast, Selma. Selma! Come back!

S: Wheeee!

b)

(F = Father; J = Jimmy)

F: OK, Jimmy, kick the ball to me.

J: Daddy, Daddy, look at me.

F: Oh, that's very good, Jimmy. Now, this time, don't throw the ball – kick it.

J: Kick?

F: Yes, with your foot. Look, like this.

J: Like this?

F: No, no, don't pick it up – that's it. Now kick it. No, don't touch the ball with your hand. Use your foot. Yes, that's it. Ouch!

J: Are you OK, Daddy?

F: Aagh!

c)

(M = Mother; R = Rebecca)

M: OK, watch me. Throw the ball in the air. Watch the ball, and hit it. OK? Now you try. Throw the ball in the air and hit the – oh, OK, try again. This time, don't look at me – look at the ball. Throw the ball in the air. Watch the ball and, ... oh, no.

R: I hate this stupid game. I want to go horseback riding. You're horrible.

M: Don't be rude, Rebecca. Pick up your racket and try again.

Unit 6

2.11

Mark, a CEO

I think I wanted to be a soldier – I liked the uniform, and lots of boys want to be soldiers when they're young, don't they? Later on, I thought about being an engineer, but I didn't do any work at school so I couldn't go to college. In the end, I started working with my father, and now I'm the CEO of my own company, so I'm really happy with the way things turned out.

Karen, a surgeon

I've always wanted to be a surgeon, right from when I was a small child. It's my vocation. When I was at school, my best friend wanted to be a ballet dancer, but even then I knew what I wanted to do. There's never been a doctor in our family, but my father's a butcher, so I suppose it's similar!

Frank, a teacher

When I was five, I wanted to be a farmer or a vet because I loved animals. Later, I wanted to be a pilot, but my eyes weren't good enough. When I was at college, I wanted to be a snowboarder, but I wasn't good enough to be a professional. After college, I had no idea what I wanted to do, so I became a teacher, and I love it.

Mia, a model

My dream was to be an archaeologist. My family went on vacation to Mexico, and I loved the Pyramids and ruins so much that I became really interested in ancient history. But when I was sixteen, I had the chance to earn a lot of money as a model, so I stopped studying, and I've been working as a model for five years now. I want to start studying again when I'm thirty.

2.13

- a) said, read, fed, seen
- b) known, bought, flown, grown
- c) rung, sung, brought, hung
- d) drunk, taught, thought, fought

2.14

(P = Presenter; I = Interviewer;

Mr. M = Mr. McClusky)

P: And this week, in our regular report, we visit a department store with a difference ...

I: Mr. McClusky, can you tell us what is so special about your department store?

Mr. M: Well, McClusky's is a large department store and you can find everything you want for the home here. Oh, and it stays open late on Thursdays and Saturdays.

I: Yes, that's right, but isn't there something special about the staff – you know – has anybody retired recently?

Mr. M: Ah, oh, I see. No. Nobody has retired recently, and we never force anybody to retire here.

I: How old is your oldest employee?

Mr. M: Well, that's Art. Art is our cleaner, and he's 87.

I: 87! And he cleans the store every day?

Mr. M: Well, not alone, no. He works with two other cleaners. They're not so old – Marshal's 70 and Ivy's 75 – no, 76. That's right, she's just had her birthday.

I: And they don't want to retire?

Mr. M: No, I think they enjoy the work, and it keeps them young. Also, we pay a decent salary, and they get four weeks of paid vacation a year.

I: So how many workers do you have who are over retirement age?

Mr. M: Well, we employ a staff of 105 and half of those are over 65. The young ones work in the office – we've got computers now, you know.

I: Really? Has the store changed much over the years?

Mr. M: No, not really. I started working here in 1948 and I've only had two secretaries in all that time. Barbara, my first secretary, resigned when she was 72.

I: Oh, why did she leave McClusky's so young?

Mr. M: Well, she was getting married to somebody who lived in another town.

I: Wow! That's amazing ... Do you think you will ever retire, Mr. McClusky?

Mr. M: Oh, yes. I'm almost 86! My son's going to take over the business next year. He's only 64.

2.15

My friend Hannah has the best job in the world – she's a personal trainer. She has about ten clients, and she writes an exercise program for each person. She doesn't work for anybody – she's self-employed.

She starts work very early every day

because some of her clients like to exercise before they go to work. I think she starts her first client at seven o'clock in the morning.

I think it's a great job, because Hannah loves sports and so she gets money for doing what she loves. She earns a reasonably good salary. I think she charges \$35 an hour, so her salary depends on the number of hours she works. She loves her job because she helps people get in shape and stay healthy.

I'd love to do her job because she doesn't have to work in an office all day and she doesn't have to go to the gym in her free time either. She's her own boss so she can go on vacation when she wants, and she always looks fantastic in a swimsuit.

2.16

(C = Chair; L = Layla, M = Mike; J = Jack; E = Elise)

C: Good afternoon, everybody. Welcome to *Quit Smoking*. I'm John and I'm an ex-smoker. Can you tell the group who you are, and what you do?

L: Hello. My name's Layla. I work for a big company and we produce high-quality audio equipment. I'm responsible for sales and promotion.

M: Good morning. My name's Mike. I just graduated from college. Right now, I'm unemployed. I'm looking for a job in publishing.

J: Hi. I'm Jack and I work as a bodyguard. I'm self-employed and I'm based in Detroit, but my job involves a lot of foreign travel. I have to take important clients safely from one place to another.

E: My name's Elise. I'm a photographer and I work for a music magazine. We're based in Detroit. I run the photography department and I'm in charge of taking pictures of rock stars and bands, so I travel a lot.

C: Thank you. OK, let's get this meeting started. Coffee is at ...

Review B

2.20

(T = Tom; P = Patsy)

T: Patsy and I are very different ...

P: Yes, very different. In fact, we're complete opposites. Tom's water and I'm air. He's a Scorpio and I'm an Aquarius.

T: Mm, I don't really believe in all that ...

P: And Tom's much older than me. I think that also makes a difference.

T: I don't see what difference ...

P: The clothes he wears make him look older, too.

T: That's true. On the other hand, Patsy dresses like a teenager.

P: No, I don't. But I do enjoy finding fashionable clothes at good prices. I always buy him really good clothes, but he never wears them.

T: We've been married for twenty-two years ...

P: Is it that long?

T: ... and sometimes we can't understand why we've stayed together ...

P: Yes. He likes watching sports on TV, whereas I like getting out there and playing them. I can't stand watching sports on TV.

T: She loves shopping, but I prefer sitting in my backyard with a newspaper.

P: So, why are we together? Simple – I love him. He's a good husband and a good father to our children. And he's one of the funniest people I've ever met.

T: I think I'm the luckiest person I know.

Unit 7

2.22

Jo, 26

I work for an organization called Eco Vacations, and we're demonstrating against mass tourism. I'm not against tourism but I believe in responsible tourism. We're against big hotels and big tour groups. With Eco Vacations you can really experience the local culture. We organize accommodations with local families. Would you like some information about our vacations?

Jake, 14

I'm having a good time with my friends. It's my first demonstration. I don't feel strongly about politics, but I'm worried about global warming. I don't really care about people – they can take care of themselves. I'm in favor of protecting wild animals – I want to help polar bears and penguins. If the ice caps melt, where will they live?

Debbie, 37

I'm here because we're destroying the planet. I'm protesting against multinational companies. They're polluting our rivers and oceans and they're causing global warming. I'm in favor of small family-run companies. I'm against food imports. I support local farmers and I buy food from farmers' markets, not large grocery stores.

Carlos, 27

I'm riding my bicycle today because I'm against big cars in the city. I'm not anti-cars – in fact, I have a car – but I just think more people should use public transportation. Leave your car at home – ride a bicycle!

2.24

(H = Helen; C = Carole)

H: I've decided I'm going to change my life.

C: Yeah, me too. I want a bigger house, a bigger salary, and a better boyfriend.

H: No, I'm serious. I'm going to do something important.

C: What do you mean?

H: I want to help people less fortunate than me – I'm going to go abroad and work with children.

C: Oh. Well, that's, uh ... Where are you going?

H: Ghana.

C: Ghana? What about the animals?

H: No, I'm not going to work with animals – I want to help people.

C: No, I mean the dangerous animals – crocodiles, lions, snakes, ...

H: Oh, I see. I'm not just going there alone. I've joined an organization, and they're going to arrange everything for me. I'm going to work in an orphanage.

C: Good for you. How much are they going to pay you?

H: Nothing. I'm a volunteer. In fact, I'm going to pay them \$25 a week.

C: You're going to pay *them*. I see. When are you going?

H: Soon – next month.

C: Wow. How exciting! I'd love to visit South America.

H: Africa. Ghana's in Africa.

C: Oh, is it? There are a lot of dangerous animals in Africa.

H: I told you, I'm not ...

2.25

(M = Mom; H = Helen)

M: Who's picking you up at the airport?

H: I told you, Mom.

M: I know, but I'm worried. Ghana's a long way from here.

H: OK. Let's go through it again. I'm arriving in Accra at ten o'clock in the morning, and the volunteers' coordinator is meeting me. That's Bob White. He's taking me to my accommodations.

M: And you're staying with a family?

H: Yes, I'm staying with a Ghanaian family.

M: Don't you want to stay in a hotel?

H: No, I want to have an authentic experience, so I'm staying with the Odoi family.

M: You have to write down their name and address for me.

H: Yes, don't worry. Then, I'm starting work on Monday.

M: And where exactly are you working?

H: In a small town near Accra.

M: How are you getting there?

H: By bus. Mrs. Odoi's going to make sure I get the right bus.

M: When are you coming back?

H: On September 15. Just in time for your birthday.

Unit 8

2.29

I wasn't very academic at school, but I loved art. Yes, art was my favorite subject because I was good at it. We had a wonderful teacher – her name was Ms. Lewis, and I remember the first day she arrived at school. She didn't look like a teacher. She had long, black hair, and she wore bright colors. She was pretty young – thirty, thirty-one, something like that, and we all fell in love with her – boys and girls! She wasn't just beautiful – she was a really good teacher, too. Her classes were interesting and varied. We only had three hours of art each week, on Wednesday afternoons. Ms. Lewis loved photography and she taught us how to develop our own pictures. I really enjoyed that, and for a while I wanted to be a professional photographer. In the end, I realized that it was difficult to make a living as a photographer, so I went to college and studied engineering. But I still love taking pictures, and recently I won a competition – Ms. Lewis would be proud of me!

2.31

- Did Aldo have to obey his dad without question? Yes, he did. No, he didn't.
- Did Aldo have to go to church on Sundays? Yes, he did. No, he didn't.
- Could Aldo bring his girlfriends home? Yes, he could. No, he couldn't.
- Did Tony have to do his homework every night? Yes, he did. No, he didn't.
- Could Paulie come home at any time? Yes, he could. No, he couldn't.
- Does Paulie have to hide things from his dad? Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

2.32

(P = Paulie; A = Aldo)

P: Buckle up, Grandpa.

A: All these rules and regulations. In my day, we didn't have to wear seatbelts at all.

P: And it was much more dangerous.

A: But we didn't drive so fast. And there weren't so many cars on the road. In my day, we couldn't drive fast because there weren't any highways.

P: I thought you drove a horse and cart in your day.

A: Hmm, very funny. Actually, I had a beautiful motorcycle – a Harley Davidson – and I didn't have to wear a helmet. Not like nowadays.

P: Do you really think life was better in your day, Grandpa?

A: Well, life was less complicated. For example, we didn't have all these credit cards in my day. We had to use cash to buy things.

P: But not everything was better, Grandpa. You had to do military service – I wouldn't like that.

A: I was proud to do military service. In my day, a man had to be a man. Not like these days – men and women look exactly the same to me. In my day, you couldn't have long hair, or wear

earrings like some men do nowadays.

- P: Ha-ha. But some things were more difficult in your day, Grandpa – like traveling.
- A: That's right, we couldn't travel by plane like you do today – it was too expensive. But we traveled by train and bus. I remember the first time I went to Louisiana ...

2.33

- (L = Liza; M = Mike; J = John; A = Anne)
- L: This is my mom, and this is my dad.
- M: Hello, Mrs. Wilson ... Mr. Wilson.
- J: Nice to meet you, Mike. Please call us John and Anne.
- A: Come in. Have a seat.
- J: That's a very nice suit. Have you come straight from work?
- M: Oh, no, I usually wear jeans at work!
- J: Oh ... what do you do?
- M: Ah, er, I'm a, um, sort of interior design consultant.
- L: He works in a furniture store.
- A: Oh, that's nice. Um, Liza tells us you were in France recently.
- M: Yes, that's right, I went to Paris last month.
- A: Nice. Did you like it?
- M: Well, it's a beautiful city, but the people were very rude.
- A: Oh. Did you know John's mother's from Paris?
- M: Oh, no, I didn't. I'm sorry. I didn't mean ... um ...
- J: Don't worry, my mother's very rude, too. ... Now, Mike, would you like a beer?
- M: Yes, please. Oh, is that a picture of Liza when she was younger?
- J: Yes, she was ten here. Would you like to see some more pictures?
- L: Oh, Dad!
- M: Oh, yes, please, er ... John.
- A: OK, John, you get the photo albums out, and I'll talk to Mike. So, Mike, what are you going to do in the future?
- M: Well, in my free time, I'm studying at college ...

2.35

- (J = Jeanette; E = Elaine)
- J: How are your children?
- E: Oh, Jenny's great. She's a dentist now.
- J: Oh, very good.
- E: Yes, it's a good job, but I don't think she should work.
- J: Oh, why?
- E: Well, her son's only three. I think mothers should stay at home and take care of the children.
- J: Oh, yes, I agree. I think children need their mothers at home.
- E: Absolutely. My daughter thinks fathers should stay at home and take care of the children.
- J: Oh, no, I don't agree with that. It's a woman's job.
- E: Exactly. Now, what about your son? Is he married yet?
- J: No, but he's living with his girlfriend.
- E: Oh. I don't think couples should live together before they get married.
- J: Oh, I'm not so sure. I don't think my

son's ready to get married.

- E: No, he's like my Sam. He's thirty-six and he's still living at home.
- J: Really? I think young people should leave home when they're eighteen.
- E: Well, it depends. Sam can't afford to leave home.
- J: Well, when we were young, ...

Unit 9

3.03

- 1 I'd love to meet your friends – let's make a date now. We could try that new restaurant downtown.
- 2 No, no, don't do it like that. Do it like this. Go ahead, do it again, and, oh, then get me some coffee.
- 3 No problem – I'm sure I can win. I know I'm faster than the others.
- 4 I'm working here to get some experience, but I'm going to start up my own company soon.
- 5 Yeah, whatever – I really don't mind. I'll be happy if we go out. I'll be happy if we stay in. Let's do whatever you want to do.
- 6 Look, are you sure you're OK? Because I can stay longer if you want. Anyway, you know where I am if you need me. Take care.

3.04

Your description of a dog is your own personality.
Your description of a cat is your partner's personality.
Your description of a rat is your enemy's personality.
Your description of coffee is how you see love.
Your description of an ocean is your own life.

3.05

- (P = Presenter; K = Kay; R = Ramiro; C = Cindy; H = Hans)
- P: Welcome to *The Vacation Station*. We start off with a report from Thailand. For this report, we spoke to tourists on the beach in Ao Nang in the south of Thailand. We asked them what they were doing in Thailand. First, we spoke to Kay and Ramiro.
- K: We're on our honeymoon and we're staying in the Rayavadee Hotel. It's wonderful. They put rose petals in our bathtub.
- R: Next week we want to go to the north. I want to go trekking in the jungle, and Kay wants to take a cooking class. We both love Thai food, so I think it's a great idea.
- P: Then we spoke to Cindy.
- C: I'm on vacation and I'm taking a scuba diving class. I like swimming in the ocean, so I spend most of my day on the beach, and then in the evening I go shopping. I have a store back home in Sydney so I'm always looking for things to take back there.
- P: Finally, we spoke to Hans.
- H: I'm living here right now. I come from Germany but I've rented a house here

for six months because I'm writing a novel. I think Thailand is a perfect place to live – it's cheap, hot, and inspiring. My girlfriend isn't very happy about it, though – I have a dog in Germany, and she has to stay at home and take care of it!

3.06

- (P = Presenter; B = Becky; J = Jeff)
- P: For our second report from Thailand, we met two people who came here on vacation and never went home. Becky, how long have you been here in Thailand?
- B: I arrived here in 2004. I only came here on vacation, but I liked it so much I stayed.
- P: What have you been doing here since 2004?
- B: I've been running a bar on the beach. It was difficult at first because I opened my bar two months before the tsunami in December 2004. Our bar was OK, but tourists stayed away for a long time after that, and I almost had to close the bar. But I've had a lot of support from my husband, and now the bar is going very well.
- P: Did you get married here?
- B: Yes, my husband's Thai, and we've been married for two years now.
- P: Do you go back to the USA very often?
- B: I haven't been to the USA for a few years.
- P: What do you miss about home?
- B: I guess I miss my family and friends, but they love coming here.
- P: Jeff, how long have you been here?
- J: For about six months.
- P: What have you been doing here since you arrived?
- J: I've been working in a dive center.
- P: Have you learned the language?
- J: Thai? Ha-ha. No, it's really difficult. I've been taking lessons for a few months, but I'm not a very good student.
- P: What do you like most about living in Thailand?
- J: Apart from the obvious things like the weather, the food, and the laid-back lifestyle, I like the fact that it's close to other interesting places. I've been to Laos, Cambodia, Bali, and Malaysia. But I always like coming back to Thailand. I'm not going home for a long time.

Review C

3.12

(I = Interviewer; K = Kyle; N = Naomi)

- I: Tell me, Kyle, how did your family decide to go green?
- K: It was Dad's idea, really. When we were young, Dad had an important job with an oil company. He was very ambitious, and we didn't see him a lot, because he was always flying around the world. But when he was forty-three, he lost his job. After he lost his job, he changed completely. He started working as a gardener, met new friends, and that's how he became interested in green issues.
- I: Very different from his old life?
- K: Yeah. He actually became a bit of a rebel. So when he asked us about going green, I wasn't surprised.
- I: How did you feel about the changes you had to make, Naomi?
- N: I was very happy. Last year, Dad and I took part in a demonstration about climate change in Washington, DC. It was fun, and I had a great day, but when I went back home I felt I needed to do more. These are serious problems. We all have to make changes to our lives now!
- I: What about you, Kyle?
- K: Mostly it's OK. I don't mind walking and cycling. I agree with recycling bottles and paper and all that, but I get tired of eating potatoes, salad, and apples. Sometimes I just want to eat a hamburger, turn all the lights on in every room in the house, and take a jacuzzi bath. And I'd really like to get a motorcycle when I'm older.
- I: What about your friends, what do they think?
- N: They're all very worried about climate change. At my school, I've started an environmental group. We're trying to persuade people to change their lives. My friends think I'm very bossy, but all this is too important! We have to do something before it's too late. We can't close our eyes to this problem.
- K: My friends think my dad is crazy – I think he's crazy too sometimes – but all my friends agree that climate change is a real problem and we should do everything we can to stop it. I hope the changes my family is making can help, but I'm not sure.

Unit 10

3.14

(R = Receptionist; W = Woman)

- R: New Life Center. Can I help you?
- W: Yes. Could you give me some information about your center?
- R: Sure. When would you like to come?
- W: Actually, it's not for me. It's for my husband. It's a surprise for his birthday.
- R: Ah, lucky man!
- W: Yes ... Could you tell me something about the program?

- R: Sure. As soon as he arrives here, he'll take a fitness test.
- W: OK. Umm, he isn't in great shape.
- R: Well, we start every day at 7:30 a.m. He'll do a yoga class before breakfast.
- W: Ha-ha. He usually has a cigarette before breakfast!
- R: Oh, no. If he has a cigarette here, he'll be in big trouble. It's a strictly no smoking area.
- W: Well, it's a good idea for him to give up smoking. He says he'll give up as soon as he feels more relaxed.
- R: Oh, well, this is the ideal place to relax. After the morning walk, he'll have a sauna and jacuzzi.
- W: Oh, he'll enjoy that. But what's this walk?
- R: They go for a brisk walk in the morning from 8:30 to 12:30. That's four hours.
- W: Four hours! He hates walking. He only walks from the front door to his car.
- R: Oh, don't worry. When they get to the top of the mountain, they have a twenty-minute break before they come down again.
- W: And what about the afternoon? Will he relax?
- R: No, not really. He'll go to the gym in the afternoon. But he'll have time to relax in the evening.
- W: Oh, my goodness. I don't think he'll thank me for this.
- R: Believe me, when he finishes the week, he'll feel like a new man.
- W: If he finishes the week!

3.15

- a) Will he take a fitness test? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- b) Will he do yoga? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- c) Will he have a cigarette? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- d) Will he have a sauna and a jacuzzi? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- e) Will he go for a four-hour walk? Yes, he will. No, he won't.
- f) Will he have time to relax in the afternoon? Yes, he will. No, he won't.

3.18

The healthiest person I know is my cousin, Darren. He's twenty-six and he's training to be an army officer. Darren's tall and well built, and he looks fantastic in his uniform. He's also very strong, and he has amazing stamina. For his training, he has to do really difficult exercises. For example, he has to run up mountains carrying about forty kilos of equipment on his back. That's almost like carrying a person! He has to eat a really high-calorie diet, but he's always loved his food so that's not too difficult for him. He says he's enjoying the training, but it's hard to believe because he used to be so lazy. When he was a student, he never got up before noon, and he never did any housework. Now, he gets up at 5:30 in the morning, and he has to iron his uniform every day!

3.20

My dream car is an old car. I love cars from the fifties or sixties, and my favorite is a Chevrolet. A really big, old Chevrolet. It has to be black – definitely black – with a silver bumper and big, flashy headlights. Inside, it's really spacious with plenty of room to stretch your legs. The seats are soft and made of leather. Red leather. No, brown leather. Brown is more sophisticated. Oh, and there's a beautiful old radio with Elvis playing really loud. I love Elvis.

I'd like to take all my friends out in my car. I can imagine wearing glamorous evening clothes and going to a fancy restaurant in New York. As we drive down Fifth Avenue, everybody turns to look at our fabulous car ...

Unit 11

3.23

(I = Interviewer; R = Ricardo; A = Alicia; H = Hank)

Ricardo

- I: So, Ricardo, which animals do you like or dislike?
- R: I like dogs and I hate cats.
- I: Oh, why?
- R: Because I'm allergic to cats.
- I: Oh, I see.
- R: But I'm interested in wild birds. In fact, I'm writing a book on South American eagles. I find the Black-chested Buzzard Eagle particularly fascinating.
- I: Gosh. Are there any animals you're afraid of?
- R: Yes, bulls. I once went camping in the south of Argentina. When I put the tent up, there weren't any animals in the field, but when I woke up, I could see this shadow outside the tent – a big shadow. And I could hear heavy breathing.
- I: Oh, my goodness. A bull?
- R: No, actually it was a cow. A very big cow. But I thought it was a bull.

Alicia

- I: Which animals do you like or dislike, Alicia?
- A: Well, I like most animals, but I'm really crazy about horses. I think they're wonderful, beautiful animals. I don't like mice, obviously. And I really can't stand frogs. Ugggh, they're gross.
- I: Are you afraid of frogs?
- A: Afraid? I'm terrified of them.
- I: Are there any other animals you're afraid of?
- A: Well, most wild animals. I don't think I'd like to meet a lion or a crocodile in the street. I enjoy watching documentaries about them, but I wouldn't have one as a pet.

Hank

- I: And Hank, which animals do you like or dislike?
- H: I'm fascinated by all animals.
- I: Have you ever had any experience with

wild animals?

H: Yes. I used to work in a zoo.

I: Oh, great.

H: You wouldn't think it was great if you were an animal. How would you like to live in a cage?

I: Oh, no, that would be, um ... Are there any animals you're afraid of?

H: No, I'm afraid of humans.

I: Well, thank you for your help. Bye.

3.26

Tim

(I = Interviewer; T = Tim)

I: Can you describe your pet?

T: She's very fat and not very pretty. But she's got a cute, curly tail.

I: Is she a good companion?

T: Yes, absolutely. I always tell her my problems, and she listens.

I: Do you and your pet look alike?

T: I hope not.

I: If you were an animal, what would you like to be?

T: A dolphin. I love the ocean, and dolphins are intelligent and funny – like me!

Gus

(I = Interviewer; G = Gus)

I: Can you describe your pet?

G: He's black and has eight hairy legs.

I: Is he a good companion?

G: Yeah. He's like a friend. But other people are afraid of him. He scares people away.

I: Do you and your pet look alike?

G: I'm not that hairy – but I think he looks cool, like me.

I: If you were an animal, what would you like to be?

G: A lion, because they're big and tough, and they rule.

Maxine

(I = Interviewer; M = Maxine)

I: Can you describe your pet?

M: She's very fluffy and very lovable. My boyfriend doesn't like her because she bit him – she doesn't like men.

I: Is she a good companion?

M: Yes, she's good company for me when my boyfriend goes away on business. And she enjoys doing the same things as me – she loves to sleep all day and party all night long.

I: Do you and your pet look alike?

M: I think that she's better looking than me – who could resist those brown eyes?

I: If you were an animal, what would you like to be?

M: I *am* an animal.

3.27

I know somebody who has an iguana as a pet. It's a man I work with named Angus. The iguana's name is Iggy and it's probably about five years old – that's how long I've known Angus and he got it soon after we met. It was a birthday gift from his wife. It's almost a meter long from the tip of its nose to the end of its tail and it's a beautiful green color. Like all reptiles, iguanas never stop growing, so Iggy will get bigger and bigger. It's kind of shy and nervous, which

is exactly the opposite of Angus, who's very outgoing and confident. It's definitely better looking than Angus, though. Iggy doesn't sleep in a cage. Right now, it lives at the top of the drapes in Angus' living room. When it was young, it ate crickets, but now that it's adult, it doesn't need so much protein – in fact, it's completely vegetarian. Angus takes it for walks in the park on a leash. It's funny – when it's scared, it runs up Angus' body and sits on his head.

Unit 12

3.31

- a) Was your house built before 1980?
Yes, it was. No, it wasn't.
- b) Were your shoes designed in Italy?
Yes, they were. No, they weren't.
- c) Is your salary paid by check?
Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
- d) Were you invited to any parties last week? Yes, I was. No, I wasn't.
- e) Is your name spelled the same in English? Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
- f) Was your cell phone made in Japan?
Yes, it was. No, it wasn't.

3.32

The most incredible building I've ever seen is the Alhambra. It's a beautiful palace in Granada in the south of Spain. The first time I saw the Alhambra Palace was when I was eighteen – I went to visit my brother who was studying in Granada. I think it was built in the thirteenth or fourteenth century for the Moorish kings. Alhambra is an Arabic name – it means "red," probably because of the color of the walls. It's an enormous building. I don't know who the architect was, but the style is Moorish, or Islamic. I love the gardens – water is very important. You can hear water running wherever you go. But it isn't only the building that's so great. I think the location is the most incredible thing about it. It's built on a hill overlooking Granada with the Sierra Nevada mountains in the background. I've been there four times, and each time I think it is more beautiful. In my opinion, it is definitely one of the seven wonders of the modern world.

Review D

3.38

(D = Dom; L = Lou)

- D: That's incredible! I'm just reading about albatrosses, Lou. Did you know that they fly around the world at least once a year? That's 40,000 kilometers!
- L: Wow! That's a long way. What's the longest trip you've ever taken, Dom?
- D: Not as far as an albatross. I think it was when I was in Thailand.
- L: Oh, yeah?
- D: Emma and I were living in Bangkok and we decided to go to Koh Tao on vacation.
- L: Koh Tao?
- D: Yeah. It means "Turtle Island" in Thai. It's near Koh Samui.

L: Ah, I see.

D: Anyway, we had to take a night train from Bangkok to Chumphon in the south of Thailand and then a boat from there to Koh Tao.

L: How exciting!

D: So, we were taken to the train station in Bangkok and then we waited there for two hours. We left the station at around 7:30 p.m.

L: Oh.

D: Yeah. At first we felt really excited, but after about an hour we started feeling pretty tired. It was noisy and hot. I think I got to sleep at around 11:30 p.m.

L: Oh, that's not so bad.

D: Mm. The next morning at three o'clock, the train stopped, and we were told to get off. It was the middle of the night, so it was still dark. We had to wait in a small station for a bus to take us to the boat.

L: How did you feel?

D: Really tired! And hungry and thirsty, but the only place we could get a drink was from an old lady who served terrible coffee.

L: Oh, poor you.

D: Then the mosquitoes started biting us – and they were hungry, too! Well, they bit me but they didn't really bite Emma.

L: Oh, no!

D: Four hours later the bus arrived, and we were taken to the boat. Then it started raining as the boat moved out into the ocean.

L: Oh, how annoying!

D: Suddenly, as quickly as it had started, the rain stopped, and the sun came out.

L: Aha! A happy ending!

D: Yes, it was. Eventually we arrived at Koh Tao, seventeen hours after our journey had begun.

L: Ahh. Were you tired?

D: Absolutely exhausted, but really happy.

Phonetic symbols & spelling

Vowels

/ɪ/	ship	/ʃɪp/	(bu ild, bu siness, gy m, spin a ch, w omen)
/i/	need	/niːd/	(be an, he , key , nie ce, pe ople, sardine)
/ʊ/	put	/pʊt/	(co uld, fo ot, w oman)
/u/	pool	/puːl/	(flew , fr uit, lose , rule , shoe , throug h, two)
/e/	egg	/eg/	(break fast, fr ie nd , ma ny, said)
/ə/	about	/əˈbaʊt/	(ar rive, husb and, lemon , nerv ous, police)
/ɜː/	verb	/vɜːrb/	(learn , curly , skirt , word)
/ɔː/	saw	/sɔː/	(abroad , caught , talk , thought , water)
/æ/	back	/bæk/	(bag , fast , laugh)
/ʌ/	bus	/bʌs/	(blood , does , enough , onion)
/ɑː/	father	/ˈfɑːðər/	(car , heart , pasta)

Diphthongs

/eɪ/	face	/feɪs/	(break , eight , fail , say , they)
/ɔɪ/	boy	/bɔɪ/	(noise)
/oʊ/	nose	/noʊz/	(althoug h, coat , know , shoulder)
/aɪ/	white	/waɪt/	(buy , die , eye , height , high , my)
/aʊ/	mouth	/maʊθ/	(town)

Consonants

/p/	pen	/pen/	(happy)
/b/	bag	/bæg/	(rabbit)
/t/	tea	/ti/	(ate , fatter , work ed)
/d/	dog	/dɒg/	(add ress, play ed)
/tʃ/	chip	/tʃɪp/	(natural , watch)
/dʒ/	jazz	/dʒæz/	(age , bridge , generous)
/k/	cake	/keɪk/	(chem istry, kitchen , knock , toothache)
/g/	girl	/gɜːl/	(foggy)
/f/	fat	/fæt/	(different , laugh , photograph er)
/v/	very	/veri/	(of)
/θ/	thin	/θɪn/	(think)
/ð/	these	/ðiːz/	(they)
/s/	snake	/sneɪk/	(city , message , race)
/z/	zoo	/zu/	(has)
/ʃ/	sugar	/ˈʃʊɡər/	(descript ion, mach ine)
/z/	measure	/ˈmeʒər/	(garage , usual)
/m/	map	/mæp/	(summer)
/n/	name	/neɪm/	(sunny , knife)
/ŋ/	ring	/rɪŋ/	(thanks , tongue)
/h/	house	/haʊs/	(who)
/l/	leg	/leg/	(hill , possib le)
/r/	road	/rəʊd/	(carry , write)
/w/	wine	/waɪn/	(one , why)
/j/	yes	/jes/	(used , usual)

Stress

Word stress is shown by underlining the stressed syllable: *water*, *amazing*, *Japanese*.

Letters of the alphabet

/eɪ/	/i/	/e/	/aɪ/	/oʊ/	/u/	/ɑː/
Aa	Bb	Ff	Ii	Oo	Qq	Rr
Hh	Cc	Ll	Yy	Uu		
Jj	Dd	Mm	Ww			
Kk	Ee	Nn				
	Gg	Ss				
	Pp	Xx				
	Tt					
	Vv					
	Zz					

Irregular verbs

Infinitive	Simple past	Past participle	Infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
beat	beat	beaten	lie	lay	lain
become	became	become	light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
bend	bent	bent	make	made	made
bet	bet	bet	mean	meant /ment/	meant /ment/
bite	bit	bitten	meet	met	met
blow	blew	blown	pay	paid	paid
break	broke	broken	put	put	put
bring	brought /brɒt/	brought /brɒt/	read	read /red/	read /red/
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built /bɪlt/	ride	rode	ridden
burn	burned	burned /burnt	ring	rang	rung
burst	burst	burst	rise	rose	risen
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔt/	bought /bɔt/	run	ran	run
can	could /kʊd/	(been able)	say	said /sed/	said /sed/
catch	caught /kɔt/	caught /kɔt/	see	saw /sɔ:/	seen
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
deal /di:l/	dealt /delt/	dealt /delt/	shine	shone	shone
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
do	did	done	show	showed	shown
draw	drew	drawn	shrink	shrank	shrunk
dream	dreamed /dreamt	dreamed /dreamt	shut	shut	shut
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung
drive	drove	driven	sink	sank	sunk
eat	ate	eaten	sit	sat	sat
fall	fell	fallen	sleep	slept	slept
feed	fed	fed	slide	slid	slid
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought /fɔt/	fought /fɔt/	spend	spent	spent
find	found	found	split	split	split
fly	flew	flown	spread	spread	spread
forget	forgot	forgotten	stand	stood	stood
forgive	forgave	forgiven	steal	stole	stolen
freeze	froze	frozen	stick	stuck	stuck
get	got	gotten	swear	swore	sworn
give	gave	given	swell	swelled	swollen /swelled
go	went	gone /been	swim	swam	swum
grow	grew	grown	take	took /tʊk/	taken
hang	hung	hung	teach	taught /tɔt/	taught /tɔt/
have	had	had	tear	tore	torn
hear	heard /hɜrd/	heard /hɜrd/	tell	told	told
hide	hid	hidden	think	thought /θɔt/	thought /θɔt/
hit	hit	hit	throw	threw	thrown
hold	held	held	understand	understood	understood
hurt /hɜrt/	hurt /hɜrt/	hurt /hɜrt/	wake	woke	woken
keep	kept	kept	wear	wore /wɔr/	worn
kneel	knelt /kneeled	knelt /kneeled	win	won /wʌn/	won /wʌn/
know	knew /nju/	known	write	wrote	written
lay	laid	laid			
lead	led	led			
leave	left	left			
lend	lent	lent			